ISO/IEC/IEEE 8802-3:2026-08 (E)

Telecommunications and exchange between information technology systems - Requirements for local and metropolitan area networks - Part 3: Standard for Ethernet

Contents

1. Introduction 167

1.1 Overview 167
1.1.1 Scope 167
1.1.2 Basic concepts 167
1.1.3 Architectural perspectives 168
1.1.4 Layer interfaces 172
1.1.5 Application areas 172
1.1.6 Word usage 172
1.2 Notation 173
1.2.1 State diagram conventions 173
1.2.2 Service specification method and notation 174
1.2.3 Physical Layer and media notation 175
1.2.4 Physical Layer message notation 175
1.2.5 Hexadecimal notation 175
1.2.6 Accuracy and resolution of numerical quantities 176
1.2.7 Qm.n number format 176
1.2.8 Em dash (—) in a table cell 176
1.3 Normative references 176
1.4 Definitions 187
1.5 Abbreviations 227

2. Media Access Control (MAC) service specification 235

2.1 Scope and field of application 235
2.2 Overview of the service 235
2.2.1 General description of services provided by the layer 235
2.2.2 Model used for the service specification 235
2.2.3 Overview of interactions 235
2.2.4 Basic services 236
2.3 Detailed service specification 236
2.3.1 MA_DATA.request 236
2.3.2 MA_DATA.indication 237

3. Media Access Control (MAC) frame and packet specifications 239

3.1 Overview ... 239
3.1.1 Packet format ... 239
3.1.2 Service interface mappings ... 240
3.2 Elements of the MAC frame and packet ... 240
3.2.1 Preamble field ... 240
3.2.2 Start Frame Delimiter (SFD) field ... 240
3.2.3 Address fields ... 240
3.2.4 Destination Address field ... 241
3.2.5 Source Address field ... 242
3.2.6 Length/Type field ... 242
3.2.7 MAC Client Data field ... 242
3.2.8 Pad field ... 243
3.2.9 Frame Check Sequence (FCS) field ... 243
3.2.10 Extension field ... 243
3.3 Order of bit transmission ... 244
3.4 Invalid MAC frame ... 244

4. Media Access Control ... 245

4.1 Functional model of the MAC method ... 245
4.1.1 Overview ... 245
4.1.2 CSMA/CD operation ... 246
4.1.3 Relationships to the MAC client and Physical Layers ... 248
4.2 CSMA/CD Media Access Control (MAC) method: Precise specification ... 248
4.2.1 Introduction ... 248
4.2.2 Overview of the procedural model ... 248
4.2.3 Packet transmission model ... 251
4.2.4 Frame reception model ... 259
4.2.5 Preamble generation ... 261
4.2.6 Start frame sequence ... 261
4.2.7 Global declarations ... 261
4.2.8 Frame transmission ... 265
4.2.9 Frame reception ... 272
4.2.10 Common procedures ... 276
4.3 Interfaces to/from adjacent layers ... 276
4.3.1 Overview ... 276
4.3.2 MAC service ... 276
4.3.3 Services required from the Physical Layer ... 279
4.4 Specific implementations ... 281
4.4.1 Compatibility overview ... 281
4.4.2 MAC parameters ... 282
4.4.3 Configuration guidelines ... 283

5. Layer Management ... 284

5.1 Introduction ... 284
5.1.1 Systems Management overview ... 284
5.1.2 Layer Management model ... 284
5.1.3 Packages ... 285
5.1.4 Conformance requirements ... 285
5.2 Management facilities ... 285
5.2.1 Introduction ... 285
5.2.2 DTE MAC Sublayer Management facilities ... 285
5.2.3 DTE Physical Sublayer Management facilities ... 295

5.2.4 DTE Management procedural model ... 296

6. Physical Signaling (PLS) service specifications ... 301

6.1 Scope and field of application ... 301
6.2 Overview of the service ... 301
6.2.1 General description of services provided by the layer ... 301
6.2.2 Model used for the service specification ... 301
6.2.3 Overview of interactions ... 301
6.2.4 Basic services and options ... 302
6.3 Detailed service specification ... 302
6.3.1 Peer-to-peer service primitives ... 302
6.3.2 Sublayer-to-sublayer service primitives ... 303

7. Physical Signaling (PLS) and Attachment Unit Interface (AUI) specifications ... 305

7.1 Scope ... 305
7.1.1 Definitions ... 305
7.1.2 Summary of major concepts ... 305
7.1.3 Application ... 306
7.1.4 Modes of operation ... 306
7.1.5 Allocation of function ... 306
7.2 Functional specification ... 306
7.2.1 PLS–PMA (DTE–MAU) Interface protocol ... 306
7.2.2 PLS interface to MAC and management entities ... 313
7.2.3 Frame structure ... 315
7.2.4 PLS functions ... 316
7.3 Signal characteristics ... 319
7.3.1 Signal encoding ... 319
7.3.2 Signaling rate ... 324
7.3.3 Signaling levels ... 324
7.4 Electrical characteristics ... 324
7.4.1 Driver characteristics ... 324
7.4.2 Receiver characteristics ... 327
7.4.3 AUI cable characteristics ... 329
7.5 Functional description of interchange circuits ... 331
7.5.1 General ... 331
7.5.2 Definition of interchange circuits ... 331
7.6 Mechanical characteristics ... 333
7.6.1 Definition of mechanical interface ... 333
7.6.2 Line interface connector ... 333
7.6.3 Contact assignments ... 334

8. Medium Attachment Unit and baseband medium specifications, type 10BASE5 ... 337

8.1 Scope ... 337
8.1.1 Overview ... 337
8.1.2 Definitions ... 338
8.1.3 Application perspective: MAU and MEDIUM objectives ... 338
8.2 MAU functional specifications ... 339
8.2.1 MAU Physical Layer functions ... 339
8.2.2 MAU interface messages ... 342
8.2.3 MAU state diagrams ... 344
8.3 MAU–medium electrical characteristics ... 344

8.3.1 MAU-to-coaxial cable interface ... 344
8.3.2 MAU electrical characteristics ... 351
8.3.3 MAU–DTE electrical characteristics ... 352
8.3.4 MAU–DTE mechanical connection ... 352
8.4 Characteristics of the coaxial cable ... 352
8.4.1 Coaxial cable electrical parameters ... 352
8.4.2 Coaxial cable properties ... 353
8.4.3 Total segment dc loop resistance ... 355
8.5 Coaxial trunk cable connectors ... 355
8.5.1 Inline coaxial extension connector ... 355
8.5.2 Coaxial cable terminator ... 356
8.5.3 MAU-to-coaxial cable connection ... 356
8.6 System considerations ... 358
8.6.1 Transmission system model ... 358
8.6.2 Transmission system requirements ... 359
8.6.3 Labeling ... 360
8.7 Environmental specifications ... 360
8.7.1 General safety requirements ... 360
8.7.2 Network safety requirements ... 360
8.7.3 Electromagnetic environment ... 362
8.7.4 Temperature and humidity ... 362
8.7.5 Regulatory requirements ... 362
8.8 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 8, Medium Attachment Unit and baseband medium specifications, type 10BASE5 ... 363
8.8.1 Overview ... 363
8.8.2 Abbreviations and special symbols ... 363
8.8.3 Instructions for completing the PICS proforma ... 363
8.8.4 Identification ... 365
8.8.5 Global statement of conformance ... 365
8.8.6 PICS proforma tables for MAU ... 366
8.8.7 PICS proforma tables for MAU AUI characteristics ... 373
8.8.8 PICS proforma tables for 10BASE5 coaxial cable ... 377

9. Repeater unit for 10 Mb/s baseband networks ... 379

9.1 Overview ... 379
9.2 References ... 379
9.3 Definitions ... 379
9.4 Compatibility interface ... 379
9.4.1 AUI compatibility ... 379
9.4.2 Mixing segment compatibility ... 380
9.4.3 Link segment compatibility ... 381
9.5 Basic functions ... 381
9.5.1 Repeater set network properties ... 381
9.5.2 Signal amplification ... 381
9.5.3 Signal symmetry ... 382
9.5.4 Signal retiming ... 382
9.5.5 Data handling ... 382
9.5.6 Collision handling ... 383
9.5.7 Electrical isolation ... 385
9.6 Detailed repeater functions and state diagrams ... 385
9.6.1 State diagram notation ... 385
9.6.2 Data and collision handling ... 387
9.6.3 Preamble regeneration ... 387

9.6.4 Fragment extension ... 387
9.6.5 MAU Jabber Lockup Protection ... 387
9.6.6 Auto-Partitioning/Reconnection (optional) ... 389
9.7 Electrical isolation ... 391
9.7.1 Environment A requirements ... 391
9.7.2 Environment B requirements ... 391
9.8 Reliability ... 393
9.9 Medium attachment unit and baseband medium specification for a vendor-indepedent FOIRL ... 393
9.9.1 Scope ... 393
9.9.2 FOMAU functional specifications ... 395
9.9.3 FOMAU electrical characteristics ... 401
9.9.4 FOMAU/Optical medium interface ... 402
9.9.5 Characteristics of the optical fiber cable link segment ... 405
9.9.6 System requirements ... 406
9.9.7 Environmental specifications ... 408

10. Medium attachment unit and baseband medium specifications, type 10BASE2 ... 410

10.1 Scope ... 410
10.1.1 Overview ... 410
10.1.2 Definitions ... 411
10.1.3 Application perspective: MAU and medium objectives ... 411
10.2 References ... 412
10.3 MAU functional specifications ... 412
10.3.1 MAU Physical Layer functional requirements ... 413
10.3.2 MAU interface messages ... 415
10.3.3 MAU state diagrams ... 417
10.4 MAU–medium electrical characteristics ... 418
10.4.1 MAU-to-coaxial cable interface ... 418
10.4.2 MAU electrical characteristics ... 420
10.4.3 MAU–DTE electrical characteristics ... 421
10.5 Characteristics of coaxial cable system ... 421
10.5.1 Coaxial cable electrical parameters ... 421
10.5.2 Coaxial cable physical parameters ... 422
10.5.3 Total segment dc loop resistance ... 423
10.6 Coaxial trunk cable connectors ... 424
10.6.1 In-line coaxial extension connector ... 424
10.6.2 Coaxial cable terminator ... 425
10.6.3 MAU-to-coaxial cable connection ... 425
10.7 System considerations ... 425
10.7.1 Transmission system model ... 425
10.7.2 Transmission system requirements ... 427
10.8 Environmental specifications ... 428
10.8.1 Safety requirements ... 428
10.8.2 Electromagnetic environment ... 428
10.8.3 Regulatory requirements ... 428

11. Broadband medium attachment unit and broadband medium specifications, type 10BROAD36 ... 429

11.1 Scope ... 429
11.1.1 Overview ... 429
11.1.2 Definitions ... 431
11.1.3 MAU and medium objectives ... 431

11.1.4 Compatibility considerations ... 432
11.1.5 Relationship to PLS and AUI ... 432
11.1.6 Mode of operation ... 432
11.2 MAU functional specifications ... 432
11.2.1 MAU functional requirements ... 432
11.2.2 DTE PLS to MAU and MAU to DTE PLS messages ... 435
11.2.3 MAU state diagrams ... 436
11.3 MAU characteristics ... 439
11.3.1 MAU-to-coaxial cable interface ... 439
11.3.2 MAU frequency allocations ... 444
11.3.3 AUI electrical characteristics ... 445
11.3.4 MAU transfer characteristics ... 446
11.3.5 Reliability ... 452
11.4 System considerations ... 453
11.4.1 Delay budget and network diameter ... 453
11.4.2 MAU operation with packets shorter than 512 bits ... 453
11.5 Characteristics of the coaxial cable system ... 454
11.5.1 Electrical requirements ... 454
11.5.2 Mechanical requirements ... 454
11.5.3 Delay requirements ... 454
11.6 Frequency translator requirements for the single-cable version ... 455
11.6.1 Electrical requirements ... 455
11.6.2 Mechanical requirements ... 455
11.7 Environmental specifications ... 455
11.7.1 Safety requirements ... 455
11.7.2 Electromagnetic environment ... 456
11.7.3 Temperature and humidity ... 456

12. Physical signaling, medium attachment, and baseband medium specifications, type 1BASE5 ... 457

12.1 Introduction ... 457
12.1.1 Overview ... 457
12.1.2 Scope ... 457
12.1.3 Definitions ... 457
12.1.4 General characteristics ... 457
12.1.5 Compatibility ... 458
12.1.6 Objectives of type 1BASE5 specification ... 458
12.2 Architecture ... 458
12.2.1 Major concepts ... 458
12.2.2 Application perspective ... 459
12.2.3 Packet structure ... 459
12.3 DTE physical signaling (PLS) specification ... 462
12.3.1 Overview ... 462
12.3.2 Functional specification ... 463
12.4 Hub specification ... 469
12.4.1 Overview ... 469
12.4.2 Hub structure ... 470
12.4.3 Hub PLS functional specification ... 471
12.5 Physical medium attachment (PMA) specification ... 476
12.5.1 Overview ... 476
12.5.2 PLS–PMA interface ... 476
12.5.3 Signal characteristics ... 477
12.6 Medium Dependent Interface (MDI) specification ... 484
12.6.1 Line interface connector ... 484

Copyright © 2022 IEEE. All rights reserved.

12.6.2 Connector contact assignments ... 485
12.6.3 Labeling ... 485
12.7 Cable medium characteristics ... 486
12.7.1 Overview ... 486
12.7.2 Transmission parameters ... 486
12.7.3 Coupling parameters ... 487
12.7.4 Noise environment ... 488
12.8 Special link specification ... 489
12.8.1 Overview ... 489
12.8.2 Transmission characteristics ... 489
12.8.3 Permitted configurations ... 489
12.9 Timing ... 489
12.9.1 Overview ... 489
12.9.2 DTE timing ... 490
12.9.3 Medium timing ... 490
12.9.4 Special link timing ... 490
12.9.5 Hub timing ... 490
12.10 Safety ... 491
12.10.1 Isolation ... 491
12.10.2 Telephony voltages ... 492

13. System considerations for multisegment 10 Mb/s baseband networks ... 493

13.1 Overview ... 493
13.1.1 Repeater usage ... 494
13.2 Definitions ... 494
13.3 Transmission System Model 1 ... 494
13.4 Transmission System Model 2 ... 501
13.4.1 Round-trip collision delay ... 501
13.4.2 Interpacket gap (IPG) shrinkage ... 502
13.5 Full duplex topology limitations ... 503

14. Twisted-pair medium attachment unit (MAU) and baseband medium, type 10BASE-T including type 10BASE-Te ... 504

14.1 Scope ... 504
14.1.1 Overview ... 504
14.1.2 Definitions ... 505
14.1.3 Application perspective ... 506
14.1.4 Relationship to PLS and AUI ... 507
14.2 MAU functional specifications ... 507
14.2.1 MAU functions ... 508
14.2.2 PMA interface messages ... 512
14.2.3 MAU state diagrams ... 513
14.3 MAU electrical specifications ... 519
14.3.1 MAU-to-MDI interface characteristics ... 519
14.3.2 MAU-to-AUI specification ... 528
14.4 Characteristics of the simplex link segment ... 530
14.4.1 Overview ... 530
14.4.2 Transmission parameters ... 530
14.4.3 Coupling parameters ... 531
14.4.4 Noise environment ... 532
14.5 MDI specification ... 532
14.5.1 MDI connectors ... 532

14.5.2 Crossover function ... 533
14.6 System considerations ... 534
14.7 Environmental specifications ... 535
14.7.1 General safety ... 535
14.7.2 Network safety ... 535
14.7.3 Environment ... 536
14.8 MAU labeling ... 536
14.9 Timing summary ... 537
14.10 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 14, Twisted-pair medium attachment unit (MAU) and baseband medium, type 10BASE-T and type 10BASE-Te ... 538
14.10.1 Introduction ... 538
14.10.2 Identification of implementation ... 539
14.10.3 Identification of the protocol ... 539
14.10.4 PICS proforma for 10BASE-T ... 540

15. Fiber optic medium and common elements of medium attachment units and star, type 10BASE-F ... 555

15.1 Scope ... 555
15.1.1 Overview ... 555
15.1.2 Definitions ... 557
15.1.3 Applications perspective: MAUs, stars, and fiber optic medium ... 557
15.2 MDI optical characteristics ... 560
15.2.1 Transmit optical parameters ... 560
15.2.2 Receive optical parameters ... 567
15.3 Characteristics of the fiber optic medium ... 568
15.3.1 Optical fiber and cable ... 568
15.3.2 Optical medium connector plug and socket ... 568
15.3.3 Fiber optic medium insertion loss ... 569
15.3.4 Electrical isolation ... 570
15.4 MAU reliability ... 570
15.5 MAU–AUI specification ... 570
15.5.1 MAU–AUI electrical characteristics ... 570
15.5.2 MAU–AUI mechanical connections ... 570
15.5.3 Power consumption ... 570
15.5.4 MAU–AUI messages ... 571
15.6 Environmental specifications ... 572
15.6.1 Safety requirements ... 572
15.6.2 Electromagnetic environment ... 572
15.6.3 Other environmental requirements ... 572
15.7 MAU labeling ... 572
15.7.1 10BASE-FP star labeling ... 573
15.8 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 15, Fiber optic medium and common elements of medium attachment units and star, type 10BASE-F ... 574
15.8.1 Introduction ... 574
15.8.2 Abbreviations and special symbols ... 574
15.8.3 Instructions for completing the PICS proforma ... 574
15.8.4 Identification ... 576
15.8.5 Major capabilities/options ... 577
15.8.6 PICS Proforma for the fiber optic medium ... 577

16. Fiber optic passive star and medium attachment unit, type 10BASE-FP ... 579

16.1 Scope ... 579
16.1.1 Overview ... 579
16.2 PMA interface messages ... 580
16.2.1 PMA-to-MDI interface signal encodings ... 580
16.2.2 PMA-to-MDI OTD messages ... 580
16.2.3 MDI ORD-to-PMA messages ... 581
16.3 10BASE-FP MAU functional specifications ... 582
16.3.1 Transmit function requirements ... 582
16.3.2 Receive function requirements ... 584
16.3.3 Loopback function requirements ... 584
16.3.4 Collision presence function requirements ... 585
16.3.5 signal_quality_error Message (SQE) Test function requirements ... 586
16.3.6 Jabber function requirements ... 586
16.3.7 Link fault detection and low light function requirements ... 587
16.3.8 Interface message time references ... 588
16.3.9 MAU state diagram ... 588
16.4 Timing summary ... 596
16.5 10BASE-FP Star functional specifications ... 596
16.5.1 Star functions ... 596
16.5.2 Star optical characteristics ... 597
16.6 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 16, Fiber optic passive star and medium attachment unit, type 10BASE-FP ... 598
16.6.1 Introduction ... 598
16.6.2 Abbreviations and special symbols ... 598
16.6.3 Instructions for completing the PICS proforma ... 598
16.6.4 Identification ... 600
16.6.5 Major capabilities/options ... 601
16.6.6 PICS proforma for the type 10BASE-FP MAU ... 601
16.6.7 PICS proforma tables for 10BASE-FP stars ... 613

17. Fiber optic medium attachment unit, type 10BASE-FB ... 615

17.1 Scope ... 615
17.1.1 Overview ... 615
17.1.2 Relationship to AUI ... 615
17.2 PMA interface messages ... 616
17.2.1 PMA-to-MDI interface signal encodings ... 616
17.2.2 PMA-to-MDI OTD messages ... 616
17.2.3 MDI ORD-to-PMA messages ... 617
17.2.4 Transitions between signals ... 618
17.2.5 Signaling rate ... 618
17.3 MAU functional specifications ... 618
17.3.1 Transmit function requirements ... 618
17.3.2 Receive function requirements ... 619
17.3.3 Collision function requirements ... 619
17.3.4 Loopback function requirements ... 620
17.3.5 Fault-handling function requirements ... 620
17.3.6 Jabber function requirements ... 620
17.3.7 Low light level detection function requirements ... 621
17.3.8 Synchronous qualification function requirements ... 621
17.3.9 Interface message time references ... 622
17.3.10 MAU state diagrams ... 622
17.4 Timing summary ... 626

17.5 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 17, Fiber optic medium attachment unit, type 10BASE-FB ... 627
17.5.1 Introduction ... 627
17.5.2 Abbreviations and special symbols ... 627
17.5.3 Instructions for completing the PICS proforma ... 627
17.5.4 Identification ... 629
17.5.5 PICS proforma for the type 10BASE-FB MAU ... 629
17.5.6 PICS proforma for the type 10BASE-FB MAU ... 630

18. Fiber optic medium attachment unit, type 10BASE-FL ... 640

18.1 Scope ... 640
18.1.1 Overview ... 640
18.2 PMA interface messages ... 640
18.2.1 PMA to fiber optic link segment messages ... 641
18.2.2 Fiber optic link segment to PMA messages ... 641
18.2.3 Interface message time references ... 642
18.3 MAU functional specifications ... 642
18.3.1 MAU functions ... 642
18.3.2 MAU state diagrams ... 646
18.4 Timing summary ... 653
18.5 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 18, Fiber optic medium attachment unit, type 10BASE-FL ... 654
18.5.1 Introduction ... 654
18.5.2 Abbreviations and special symbols ... 654
18.5.3 Instructions for completing the PICS proforma ... 655
18.5.4 Identification ... 656
18.5.5 Major capabilities/options ... 657
18.5.6 PICS proforma tables for the type 10BASE-FL MAU ... 657

19. Layer Management for 10 Mb/s baseband repeaters ... 670

19.1 Introduction ... 670
19.1.1 Scope ... 670
19.1.2 Relationship to objects in IEEE Std 802.1F-1993 ... 670
19.1.3 Definitions ... 670
19.1.4 Symbols and abbreviations ... 670
19.1.5 Management model ... 671
19.2 Managed objects ... 672
19.2.1 Introduction ... 672
19.2.2 Overview of managed objects ... 672
19.2.3 Repeater managed object class ... 677
19.2.4 ResourceTypeID Managed Object Class ... 680
19.2.5 Group managed object class ... 680
19.2.6 Port managed object class ... 681

20. Layer Management for 10 Mb/s baseband medium attachment units ... 687

20.1 Introduction ... 687
20.1.1 Scope ... 687
20.1.2 Management model ... 687
20.2 Managed objects ... 687
20.2.1 Text description of managed objects ... 687
20.2.2 MAU Managed object class ... 689

21. Introduction to 100 Mb/s baseband networks, type 100BASE-T 693

21.1 Overview 693
21.1.1 Reconciliation Sublayer (RS) and Media Independent Interface (MII) 694
21.1.2 Physical Layer signaling systems 694
21.1.3 Repeater 694
21.1.4 Auto-Negotiation 694
21.1.5 Management 694
21.2 References 694
21.3 Definitions 694
21.4 Abbreviations 694
21.5 State diagrams 694
21.5.1 Actions inside state blocks 695
21.5.2 State diagram variables 695
21.5.3 State transitions 695
21.5.4 Operators 695
21.6 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma 697
21.6.1 Introduction 697
21.6.2 Abbreviations and special symbols 697
21.6.3 Instructions for completing the PICS proforma 697
21.6.4 Additional information 698
21.6.5 Exceptional information 698
21.6.6 Conditional items 698
21.7 MAC delay constraints (exposed MII) 699

22. Reconciliation Sublayer (RS) and Media Independent Interface (MII) 700

22.1 Overview 700
22.1.1 Summary of major concepts 701
22.1.2 Application 701
22.1.3 Rates of operation 702
22.1.4 Allocation of functions 702
22.1.5 Relationship of MII and GMII 702
22.2 Functional specifications 702
22.2.1 Mapping of MII signals to PLS service primitives and Station Management 702
22.2.2 MII signal functional specifications 706
22.2.3 MII data stream 715
22.2.4 Management functions 717
22.3 Signal timing characteristics 732
22.3.1 Signals that are synchronous to TX_CLK 732
22.3.2 Signals that are synchronous to RX_CLK 733
22.3.3 Signals that have no required clock relationship 733
22.3.4 MDIO timing relationship to MDC 733
22.4 Electrical characteristics 734
22.4.1 Signal levels 734
22.4.2 Signal paths 735
22.4.3 Driver characteristics 735
22.4.4 Receiver characteristics 736
22.4.5 Cable characteristics 736
22.4.6 Hot insertion and removal 738
22.5 Power supply 738
22.5.1 Supply voltage 738
22.5.2 Load current 739
22.5.3 Short-circuit protection 739

22.6 Mechanical characteristics ... 739
22.6.1 Definition of mechanical interface ... 739
22.6.2 Shielding effectiveness and transfer impedance ... 739
22.6.3 Connector pin numbering ... 740
22.6.4 Clearance dimensions ... 740
22.6.5 Contact assignments ... 740
22.7 LPI assertion and detection ... 742
22.7.1 LPI messages ... 743
22.7.2 Transmit LPI state diagram ... 743
22.7.3 Considerations for transmit system behavior ... 744
22.8 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 22, Reconciliation Sublayer (RS) and Media Independent Interface (MII) ... 745
22.8.1 Introduction ... 745
22.8.2 Identification ... 745
22.8.3 PICS proforma tables for reconciliation sublayer and media independent interface ... 746

23. Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS), Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) sublayer and baseband medium, type 100BASE-T4 ... 757

23.1 Overview ... 757
23.1.1 Scope ... 757
23.1.2 Objectives ... 757
23.1.3 Relation of 100BASE-T4 to other standards ... 757
23.1.4 Summary ... 757
23.1.5 Application of 100BASE-T4 ... 760
23.2 PCS functional specifications ... 761
23.2.1 PCS functions ... 761
23.2.2 PCS interfaces ... 766
23.2.3 Frame structure ... 766
23.2.4 PCS state diagrams ... 767
23.2.5 PCS electrical specifications ... 775
23.3 PMA service interface ... 775
23.3.1 PMA_TYPE.indication ... 776
23.3.2 PMA_UNITDATA.request ... 776
23.3.3 PMA_UNITDATA.indication ... 777
23.3.4 PMA_CARRIER.indication ... 778
23.3.5 PMA_LINK.indication ... 778
23.3.6 PMA_LINK.request ... 779
23.3.7 PMA_RXERROR.indication ... 780
23.4 PMA functional specifications ... 780
23.4.1 PMA functions ... 780
23.4.2 PMA interface messages ... 784
23.4.3 PMA state diagrams ... 785
23.5 PMA electrical specifications ... 787
23.5.1 PMA-to-MDI interface characteristics ... 787
23.5.2 Power consumption ... 801
23.6 Link segment characteristics ... 801
23.6.1 Cabling ... 801
23.6.2 Link transmission parameters ... 802
23.6.3 Noise ... 804
23.6.4 Installation practice ... 805
23.7 MDI specification ... 805
23.7.1 MDI connectors ... 805
23.7.2 Crossover function ... 806

23.8 System considerations ... 806
23.9 Environmental specifications ... 807
23.9.1 General safety ... 807
23.9.2 Network safety ... 807
23.9.3 Environment ... 809
23.10 PHY labeling ... 809
23.11 Timing summary ... 809
23.11.1 Timing references ... 809
23.11.2 Definitions of controlled parameters ... 810
23.11.3 Table of required timing values ... 812
23.12 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 23, Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS), Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) sublayer, and baseband medium, type 100BASE-T4 ... 820
23.12.1 Introduction ... 820
23.12.2 Identification ... 820
23.12.3 Major capabilities/options ... 821
23.12.4 PICS proforma tables for the Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS), Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) sublayer and baseband medium, type 100BASE-T4 ... 821

24. Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS) and Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) sublayer, type 100BASE-X ... 834

24.1 Overview ... 834
24.1.1 Scope ... 834
24.1.2 Objectives ... 834
24.1.3 Relationship of 100BASE-X to other standards ... 835
24.1.4 Summary of 100BASE-X sublayers ... 835
24.1.5 Inter-sublayer interfaces ... 836
24.1.6 Functional block diagram ... 838
24.1.7 State diagram conventions ... 838
24.2 Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS) ... 838
24.2.1 Service Interface (MII) ... 838
24.2.2 Functional requirements ... 838
24.2.3 State variables ... 844
24.2.4 State diagrams ... 849
24.3 Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) sublayer ... 856
24.3.1 Service interface ... 856
24.3.2 Functional requirements ... 860
24.3.3 State variables ... 862
24.3.4 Process specifications and state diagrams ... 864
24.4 Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer service interface ... 870
24.4.1 PMD service interface ... 870
24.4.2 Medium Dependent Interface (MDI) ... 872
24.5 Compatibility considerations ... 872
24.6 Delay constraints ... 872
24.6.1 PHY delay constraints (exposed MII) ... 873
24.6.2 DTE delay constraints (unexposed MII) ... 873
24.6.3 Carrier deassertion/assertion constraint (half duplex mode only) ... 874
24.7 Environmental specifications ... 874
24.8 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 24, Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS) and Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) sublayer, type 100BASE-X ... 875
24.8.1 Introduction ... 875
24.8.2 Identification ... 875

24.8.3 PICS proforma tables for the Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS) and Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) sublayer, type 100BASE-X 876

25. Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and baseband medium, type 100BASE-TX 879

25.1 Overview 879
25.1.1 State diagram conventions 879
25.2 Functional specifications 879
25.3 General exceptions 879
25.4 Specific requirements and exceptions 881
25.4.1 Change to 7.2.3.1.1, “Line state patterns” 881
25.4.2 Change to 7.2.3.3, “Loss of synchronization” 881
25.4.3 Change to Table 8-1, “Contact assignments for twisted pair” 881
25.4.4 Deletion of 8.3, “Station labelling” 881
25.4.5 Change to 9.1.7, “Worst case droop of transformer” 881
25.4.6 Replacement of 8.4.1, “UTP isolation requirements” 883
25.4.7 Addition to 10.1, “Receiver” 883
25.4.8 Change to 9.1.9, “Jitter” 883
25.4.9 Cable plant 883
25.4.10 Replacement of 11.2, “Crossover function” 885
25.4.11 Change to A.2, “DDJ test pattern for baseline wander measurements” 885
25.4.12 Change to Annex G, “Stream cipher scrambling function” 885
25.4.13 Change to Annex I, “Common mode cable termination” 885
25.5 EEE capability 885
25.5.1 Change to TP-PMD 7.1.2 “Encoder” 886
25.5.2 Change to TP-PMD 7.2.2 “Decoder” 887
25.5.3 Changes to 10.1.1.1 “Signal_Detect assertion threshold” 888
25.5.4 Changes to 10.1.1.2 “Signal_Detect deassertion threshold” 888
25.5.5 Change to 10.1.2 “Signal_Detect timing requirements on assertion” 889
25.5.6 Change to 10.1.3 “Signal_Detect timing requirements on deassertion” 889
25.5.7 Changes to TP-PMD 10.2 “Transmitter” 889
25.5.8 Replace TP-PMD Table 4 “Signal_Detect summary” with Table 25–3 890
25.6 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 25, Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and baseband medium, type 100BASE-TX 891
25.6.1 Introduction 891
25.6.2 Identification 891
25.6.3 Major capabilities/options 892
25.6.4 PICS proforma tables for the Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and baseband medium, type 100BASE-TX 892

26. Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and baseband medium, type 100BASE-FX 896

26.1 Overview 896
26.2 Functional specifications 896
26.3 General exceptions 896
26.4 Specific requirements and exceptions 897
26.4.1 Medium Dependent Interface (MDI) 897
26.4.2 Crossover function 897
26.5 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 26, Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and baseband medium, type 100BASE-FX 898
26.5.1 Introduction 898
26.5.2 Identification 898
26.5.3 Protocol summary 898
26.5.4 Major capabilities/options 899

26.5.5 PICS proforma tables for Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and baseband medium, type 100BASE-FX 899

27. Repeater for 100 Mb/s baseband networks 900

27.1 Overview 900
27.1.1 Scope 900
27.1.2 Application perspective 901
27.1.3 Relationship to PHY 902
27.2 PMA interface messages 902
27.3 Repeater functional specifications 902
27.3.1 Repeater functions 903
27.3.2 Detailed repeater functions and state diagrams 907
27.4 Repeater electrical specifications 921
27.4.1 Electrical isolation 921
27.5 Environmental specifications 921
27.5.1 General safety 921
27.5.2 Network safety 921
27.5.3 Electrical isolation 922
27.5.4 Reliability 922
27.5.5 Environment 923
27.6 Repeater labeling 923
27.7 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 27, Repeater for 100 Mb/s baseband networks 924
27.7.1 Introduction 924
27.7.2 Identification 924
27.7.3 Major capabilities/options 925
27.7.4 PICS proforma tables for the repeater for 100 Mb/s baseband networks 925

28. Physical Layer link signaling for Auto-Negotiation on twisted pair 933

28.1 Overview 933
28.1.1 Scope 933
28.1.2 Application perspective/objectives 934
28.1.3 Relationship to architectural layering 934
28.1.4 Compatibility considerations 935
28.2 Functional specifications 936
28.2.1 Transmit function requirements 937
28.2.2 Receive function requirements 941
28.2.3 Arbitration function requirements 943
28.2.4 Management function requirements 949
28.2.5 Absence of management function 955
28.2.6 Technology-Dependent Interface 955
28.3 State diagrams and variable definitions 957
28.3.1 State diagram variables 958
28.3.2 State diagram timers 964
28.3.3 State diagram counters 967
28.3.4 State diagrams 968
28.4 Electrical specifications 971
28.5 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 28, Physical Layer link signaling for Auto-Negotiation on twisted pair 972
28.5.1 Introduction 972
28.5.2 Identification 972
28.5.3 Major capabilities/options 973

28.5.4 PICS proforma tables for Physical Layer link signaling for Auto-Negotiation on twisted pair ... 973
28.6 Auto-Negotiation expansion ... 987

29. System considerations for multisegment 100BASE-T networks ... 988

29.1 Overview ... 988
29.1.1 Single collision domain multisegment networks ... 989
29.1.2 Repeater usage ... 990
29.2 Transmission System Model 1 ... 990
29.3 Transmission System Model 2 ... 990
29.3.1 Round-trip collision delay ... 992
29.4 Full duplex 100 Mb/s topology limitations ... 994

30. Management ... 996

30.1 Overview ... 996
30.1.1 Scope ... 997
30.1.2 Relationship to objects in IEEE 802.1F ... 997
30.1.3 Systems management overview ... 997
30.1.4 Management model ... 998
30.2 Managed objects ... 999
30.2.1 Introduction ... 999
30.2.2 Overview of managed objects ... 999
30.2.3 Containment ... 1006
30.2.4 Naming ... 1009
30.2.5 Capabilities ... 1009
30.3 Layer management for DTEs ... 1040
30.3.1 MAC entity managed object class ... 1040
30.3.2 PHY device managed object class ... 1050
30.3.3 MAC control entity object class ... 1055
30.3.4 PAUSE entity managed object class ... 1057
30.3.5 MPCP managed object class ... 1058
30.3.6 OAM object class ... 1064
30.3.7 OMPEmulation managed object class ... 1079
30.3.8 EXTENSION entity managed object class ... 1081
30.4 Layer management for 10, 100, and 1000 Mb/s baseband repeaters ... 1081
30.4.1 Repeater managed object class ... 1081
30.4.2 Group managed object class ... 1085
30.4.3 Repeater port managed object class ... 1086
30.5 Layer management for medium attachment units (MAUs) ... 1093
30.5.1 MAU managed object class ... 1093
30.6 Management for link Auto-Negotiation ... 1113
30.6.1 Auto-Negotiation managed object class ... 1113
30.7 Management for Link Aggregation ... 1118
30.7.1 Aggregator managed object class ... 1118
30.7.2 Aggregation Port managed object class ... 1126
30.7.3 Aggregation Port Statistics managed object class ... 1132
30.7.4 Aggregation Port Debug Information managed object class ... 1134
30.8 Management for WAN Interface Sublayer (WIS) ... 1137
30.8.1 WIS managed object class ... 1137
30.9 Management for Power over Ethernet ... 1144
30.9.1 PSE managed object class ... 1144
30.10 Layer management for Midspan ... 1151

30.10.1 Midspan managed object class 1151
30.10.2 PSE Group managed object class 1152
30.11 Layer Management for Physical Medium Entity (PME) 1153
30.11.1 PAF managed object class 1153
30.11.2 PME managed object class 1157
30.12 Layer Management for Link Layer Discovery Protocol (LLDP) 1160
30.12.1 LLDP Configuration managed object class 1160
30.12.2 LLDP Local System Group managed object class 1161
30.12.3 LLDP Remote System Group managed object class 1178
30.13 Management for oTimeSync entity 1193
30.13.1 TimeSync entity managed object class 1193
30.14 Management for MAC Merge Sublayer 1196
30.14.1 oMACMergeEntity managed object class 1196
30.15 Layer management for Power over Data Lines (PoDL) of Single Pair Ethernet 1199
30.15.1 PoDL PSE managed object class 1199
30.16 Management for PLCA Reconciliation Sublayer 1204
30.16.1 PLCA managed object class 1204

31. MAC Control 1207

31.1 Overview 1207
31.2 Layer architecture 1207
31.3 Support by interlayer interfaces 1207
31.3.1 MA_CONTROL.request 1209
31.3.2 MA_CONTROL.indication 1209
31.4 MAC Control frames 1210
31.4.1 MAC Control frame format 1210
31.5 Opcode-independent MAC Control sublayer operation 1211
31.5.1 Frame parsing and data frame reception 1211
31.5.2 Control frame reception 1212
31.5.3 Opcode-independent MAC Control receive state diagram 1212
31.6 Compatibility requirements 1214
31.7 MAC Control client behavior 1214
31.8 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 31, MAC Control 1215
31.8.1 Introduction 1215
31.8.2 Identification 1215
31.8.3 PICS proforma for MAC Control frames 1216

32. Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS), Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) sublayer and baseband medium, type 100BASE-T2 1217

32.1 Overview 1217
32.1.1 Relation of 100BASE-T2 to other standards 1217
32.1.2 Operation of 100BASE-T2 1217
32.1.3 Application of 100BASE-T2 1222
32.1.4 State diagram conventions 1222
32.2 PHY Control functional specifications and service interface 1222
32.2.1 PHY Control function 1222
32.2.2 PHY Control Service interface 1223
32.2.3 State diagram variables 1225
32.2.4 State diagram timers 1226
32.2.5 PHY Control state diagram 1227
32.3 PCS functional specifications 1227

32.3.1 PCS functions ... 1229
32.3.2 PCS interfaces ... 1235
32.3.3 Frame structure ... 1236
32.3.4 State variables ... 1236
32.3.5 State diagrams ... 1238
32.3.6 PCS electrical specifications ... 1239
32.4 PMA functional specifications and service interface ... 1242
32.4.1 PMA functional specifications ... 1242
32.4.2 PMA service interface ... 1246
32.5 Management functions ... 1249
32.5.1 100BASE-T2 Use of Auto-Negotiation and MII Registers 8, 9, and 10 ... 1249
32.5.2 Management functions ... 1250
32.5.3 PHY specific registers for 100BASE-T2 ... 1251
32.5.4 Changes and additions to Auto-Negotiation (Clause 28) ... 1253
32.6 PMA electrical specifications ... 1256
32.6.1 PMA-to-MDI interface characteristics ... 1256
32.6.2 Power consumption ... 1280
32.7 Link segment characteristics ... 1280
32.7.1 Cabling ... 1281
32.7.2 Link transmission parameters ... 1281
32.7.3 Noise ... 1283
32.7.4 Installation practice ... 1285
32.8 MDI specification ... 1286
32.8.1 MDI connectors ... 1286
32.8.2 Crossover function ... 1286
32.9 System considerations ... 1287
32.10 Environmental specifications ... 1287
32.10.1 General safety ... 1287
32.10.2 Network safety ... 1287
32.10.3 Environment ... 1289
32.10.4 Cabling specifications ... 1289
32.11 PHY labeling ... 1289
32.12 Delay constraints ... 1289
32.12.1 PHY delay constraints (exposed MII) ... 1289
32.12.2 DTE delay constraints (unexposed MII) ... 1290
32.13 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 32, Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS), Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) sublayer and baseband medium, type 100BASE-T2 ... 1291
32.13.1 Identification ... 1291
32.13.2 Major capabilities/options ... 1292
32.13.3 Compatibility considerations ... 1292
32.13.4 PHY control function ... 1293
32.13.5 Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS) or Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) sublayer ... 1294

33. Power over Ethernet over 2 Pairs ... 1311

33.1 Overview ... 1311
33.1.1 Objectives ... 1311
33.1.2 Compatibility considerations ... 1312
33.1.3 Relationship of Power over Ethernet to the IEEE 802.3 Architecture ... 1312
33.1.4 Type 1 and Type 2 system parameters ... 1313
33.2 Power sourcing equipment (PSE) ... 1314
33.2.1 PSE location ... 1315
33.2.2 Midspan PSE types ... 1315

33.2.3 PI pin assignments ... 1320
33.2.4 PSE state diagrams ... 1321
33.2.5 PSE detection of PDs ... 1329
33.2.6 PSE classification of PDs and mutual identification ... 1332
33.2.7 Power supply output ... 1337
33.2.8 Power supply allocation ... 1343
33.2.9 PSE power removal ... 1343
33.3 Powered devices (PDs) ... 1345
33.3.1 PD PI ... 1346
33.3.2 PD type descriptions ... 1346
33.3.3 PD state diagram ... 1347
33.3.4 PD valid and non-valid detection signatures ... 1350
33.3.5 PD classifications ... 1351
33.3.6 PSE Type identification ... 1353
33.3.7 PD power ... 1354
33.3.8 PD Maintain Power Signature ... 1359
33.4 Additional electrical specifications ... 1360
33.4.1 Electrical isolation ... 1360
33.4.2 Fault tolerance ... 1361
33.4.3 Impedance balance ... 1362
33.4.4 Common-mode output voltage ... 1363
33.4.5 Pair-to-pair output noise voltage ... 1365
33.4.6 Differential noise voltage ... 1366
33.4.7 Return loss ... 1366
33.4.8 100BASE-TX transformer droop ... 1367
33.4.9 Midspan PSE device additional requirements ... 1367
33.5 Management function requirements ... 1373
33.5.1 PSE registers ... 1373
33.6 Data Link Layer classification ... 1378
33.6.1 TLV frame definition ... 1378
33.6.2 Data Link Layer classification timing requirements ... 1378
33.6.3 Power control state diagrams ... 1379
33.6.4 State change procedure across a link ... 1384
33.7 Environmental ... 1386
33.7.1 General safety ... 1386
33.7.2 Network safety ... 1386
33.7.3 Installation and maintenance guidelines ... 1386
33.7.4 Patch panel considerations ... 1386
33.7.5 Telephony voltages ... 1386
33.7.6 Electromagnetic emissions ... 1387
33.7.7 Temperature and humidity ... 1387
33.7.8 Labeling ... 1387
33.8 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 33, Power over Ethernet over 2 Pairs ... 1388
33.8.1 Introduction ... 1388
33.8.2 Identification ... 1388
33.8.3 PICS proforma tables for Power over Ethernet over 2 Pairs ... 1390

34. Introduction to 1000 Mb/s baseband networks ... 1404

34.1 Overview ... 1404
34.1.1 Reconciliation Sublayer (RS) and Gigabit Media Independent Interface (GMII) ... 1404
34.1.2 Physical Layer signaling systems ... 1405
34.1.3 Repeater ... 1405

34.1.4 Auto-Negotiation, type 1000BASE-X ... 1405
34.1.5 Auto-Negotiation, type 1000BASE-T ... 1405
34.1.6 Auto-Negotiation, type 1000BASE-T1 ... 1405
34.1.7 Management ... 1405
34.2 State diagrams ... 1406
34.3 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma ... 1406

35. Reconciliation Sublayer (RS) and Gigabit Media Independent Interface (GMII) ... 1407

35.1 Overview ... 1407
35.1.1 Summary of major concepts ... 1408
35.1.2 Application ... 1408
35.1.3 Rate of operation ... 1408
35.1.4 Allocation of functions ... 1408
35.2 Functional specifications ... 1409
35.2.1 Mapping of GMII signals to PLS service primitives and Station Management ... 1409
35.2.2 GMII signal functional specifications ... 1412
35.2.3 GMII data stream ... 1422
35.2.4 MAC delay constraints (with GMII) ... 1425
35.2.5 Management functions ... 1425
35.3 Signal mapping ... 1425
35.4 LPI Assertion and Detection ... 1426
35.4.1 LPI messages ... 1427
35.4.2 Transmit LPI state diagram ... 1427
35.4.3 Considerations for transmit system behavior ... 1428
35.5 Electrical characteristics ... 1428
35.5.1 DC characteristics ... 1429
35.5.2 AC characteristics ... 1429
35.6 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 35, Reconciliation Sublayer (RS) and Gigabit Media Independent Interface (GMII) ... 1434
35.6.1 Introduction ... 1434
35.6.2 Identification ... 1434
35.6.3 PICS proforma tables for reconciliation sublayer and Gigabit Media Independent Interface ... 1435

36. Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS) and Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) sublayer, type 1000BASE-X ... 1439

36.1 Overview ... 1439
36.1.1 Scope ... 1439
36.1.2 Objectives ... 1439
36.1.3 Relationship of 1000BASE-X to other standards ... 1439
36.1.4 Summary of 1000BASE-X sublayers ... 1440
36.1.5 Inter-sublayer interfaces ... 1440
36.1.6 Functional block diagram ... 1441
36.1.7 State diagram conventions ... 1441
36.2 Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS) ... 1442
36.2.1 PCS Interface (GMII) ... 1442
36.2.2 Functions within the PCS ... 1443
36.2.3 Use of code-groups ... 1443
36.2.4 8B/10B transmission code ... 1443
36.2.5 Detailed functions and state diagrams ... 1456
36.3 Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) sublayer ... 1475
36.3.1 Service Interface ... 1475

36.3.2 Functions within the PMA ... 1476
36.3.3 A physical instantiation of the PMA Service Interface ... 1477
36.3.4 General electrical characteristics of the TBI ... 1480
36.3.5 TBI transmit interface electrical characteristics ... 1482
36.3.6 TBI receive interface electrical characteristics ... 1483
36.3.7 Loopback mode ... 1483
36.3.8 Test functions ... 1484
36.4 Compatibility considerations ... 1484
36.5 Delay constraints ... 1485
36.5.1 MDI to GMII delay constraints ... 1485
36.5.2 DTE delay constraints (half duplex mode) ... 1486
36.5.3 Carrier deassertion/assertion constraint (half duplex mode) ... 1486
36.6 Environmental specifications ... 1486
36.7 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 36, Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS) and Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) sublayer, type 1000BASE-X ... 1487
36.7.1 Introduction ... 1487
36.7.2 Identification ... 1487
36.7.3 Major capabilities/options ... 1488
36.7.4 PICS proforma tables for the PCS and PMA sublayer, type 1000BASE-X ... 1488

37. Auto-Negotiation function, type 1000BASE-X ... 1492

37.1 Overview ... 1492
37.1.1 Scope ... 1492
37.1.2 Application perspective/objectives ... 1492
37.1.3 Relationship to architectural layering ... 1493
37.1.4 Compatibility considerations ... 1493
37.2 Functional specifications ... 1494
37.2.1 Config_Reg encoding ... 1494
37.2.2 Transmit function requirements ... 1497
37.2.3 Receive function requirements ... 1498
37.2.4 Arbitration process requirements ... 1498
37.2.5 Management function requirements ... 1502
37.2.6 Absence of management function ... 1505
37.3 Detailed functions and state diagrams ... 1505
37.3.1 State diagram variables ... 1506
37.4 Environmental specifications ... 1512
37.5 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 37, Auto-Negotiation function, type 1000BASE-X ... 1513
37.5.1 Introduction ... 1513
37.5.2 Identification ... 1513
37.5.3 Major capabilities/options ... 1514
37.5.4 PICS proforma tables for the Auto-Negotiation function, type 1000BASE-X ... 1514

38. Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and baseband medium, type 1000BASE-LX (long wavelength laser) and 1000BASE-SX (short wavelength laser) ... 1517

38.1 Overview ... 1517
38.1.1 Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer service interface ... 1517
38.1.2 Medium Dependent Interface (MDI) ... 1518
38.2 PMD functional specifications ... 1519
38.2.1 PMD block diagram ... 1519
38.2.2 PMD transmit function ... 1519

38.2.3 PMD receive function ... 1519
38.2.4 PMD signal detect function ... 1520
38.3 PMD to MDI optical specifications for 1000BASE-SX ... 1520
38.3.1 Transmitter optical specifications ... 1521
38.3.2 Receive optical specifications ... 1522
38.3.3 Illustrative 1000BASE-SX link power budget and penalties ... 1522
38.4 PMD to MDI optical specifications for 1000BASE-LX ... 1523
38.4.1 Transmitter optical specifications ... 1523
38.4.2 Receive optical specifications ... 1524
38.4.3 Illustrative 1000BASE-LX link power budget and penalties ... 1525
38.5 Jitter specifications for 1000BASE-SX and 1000BASE-LX ... 1525
38.6 Optical measurement requirements ... 1526
38.6.1 Center wavelength and spectral width measurements ... 1526
38.6.2 Optical power measurements ... 1526
38.6.3 Extinction ratio measurements ... 1526
38.6.4 Relative Intensity Noise (RIN) ... 1526
38.6.5 Transmitter optical waveform (transmit eye) ... 1527
38.6.6 Transmit rise/fall characteristics ... 1527
38.6.7 Receive sensitivity measurements ... 1528
38.6.8 Total jitter measurements ... 1528
38.6.9 Deterministic jitter measurement (optional) ... 1529
38.6.10 Coupled Power Ratio (CPR) measurements ... 1529
38.6.11 Conformance test signal at TP3 for receiver testing ... 1529
38.6.12 Measurement of the receiver 3 dB electrical upper cutoff frequency ... 1531
38.7 Environmental specifications ... 1532
38.7.1 General safety ... 1532
38.7.2 Laser safety ... 1532
38.7.3 Installation ... 1532
38.8 Environment ... 1532
38.8.1 Electromagnetic emission ... 1532
38.8.2 Temperature, humidity, and handling ... 1533
38.9 PMD labeling requirements ... 1533
38.10 Fiber optic cabling model ... 1533
38.11 Characteristics of the fiber optic cabling ... 1533
38.11.1 Optical fiber and cable ... 1534
38.11.2 Optical fiber connection ... 1534
38.11.3 Medium Dependent Interface (MDI) ... 1535
38.11.4 Single-mode fiber offset-launch mode-conditioning patch cord for MMF operation of 1000BASE-LX ... 1536
38.12 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 38, Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and baseband medium, type 1000BASE-LX (Long Wavelength Laser) and 1000BASE-SX (Short Wavelength Laser) ... 1538
38.12.1 Introduction ... 1538
38.12.2 Identification ... 1538
38.12.3 Major capabilities/options ... 1539
38.12.4 PICS proforma tables for Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and baseband medium, type 1000BASE-LX (Long Wavelength Laser) and 1000BASE-SX (Short Wavelength Laser) ... 1540

39. Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and baseband medium, type 1000BASE-CX (short-haul copper) ... 1545

39.1 Overview ... 1545
39.2 Functional specifications ... 1545

39.2.1 PMD transmit function ... 1545
39.2.2 PMD receive function ... 1545
39.2.3 PMD signal detect function ... 1545
39.3 PMD to MDI electrical specifications ... 1546
39.3.1 Transmitter electrical specifications ... 1547
39.3.2 Receiver electrical specifications ... 1549
39.3.3 Jitter specifications for 1000BASE-CX ... 1550
39.4 Jumper cable assembly characteristics ... 1551
39.4.1 Compensation networks ... 1551
39.4.2 Shielding ... 1551
39.5 MDI specification ... 1551
39.5.1 MDI connectors ... 1552
39.5.2 Crossover function ... 1554
39.6 Electrical measurement requirements ... 1555
39.6.1 Transmit rise/fall time ... 1555
39.6.2 Transmit skew measurement ... 1555
39.6.3 Transmit eye (normalized and absolute) ... 1555
39.6.4 Through_connection impedance ... 1555
39.6.5 Jumper cable intra-pair differential skew ... 1555
39.6.6 Receiver link signal ... 1556
39.6.7 Near-End Cross Talk (NEXT) ... 1556
39.6.8 Differential time-domain reflectometry (TDR) measurement procedure ... 1556
39.7 Environmental specifications ... 1557
39.8 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 39, Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and baseband medium, type 1000BASE-CX ... 1558
39.8.1 Introduction ... 1558
39.8.2 Identification ... 1558
39.8.3 Major capabilities/options ... 1559
39.8.4 PICS proforma tables for Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and baseband medium, type 1000BASE-CX (short-haul copper) ... 1559

40. Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS), Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) sublayer and baseband medium, type 1000BASE-T ... 1563

40.1 Overview ... 1563
40.1.1 Objectives ... 1563
40.1.2 Relationship of 1000BASE-T to other standards ... 1563
40.1.3 Operation of 1000BASE-T ... 1564
40.1.4 Signaling ... 1568
40.1.5 Inter-sublayer interfaces ... 1569
40.1.6 Conventions in this clause ... 1569
40.2 1000BASE-T Service Primitives and Interfaces ... 1569
40.2.1 Technology-Dependent Interface ... 1569
40.2.2 PMA Service Interface ... 1570
40.2.3 PMA_TXMODE.indication ... 1572
40.2.4 PMA_CONFIG.indication ... 1573
40.2.5 PMA_UNITDATA.request ... 1573
40.2.6 PMA_UNITDATA.indication ... 1574
40.2.7 PMA_SCRSTATUS.request ... 1575
40.2.8 PMA_RXSTATUS.indication ... 1575
40.2.9 PMA_REMRXSTATUS.request ... 1576
40.2.10 PMA_RESET.indication ... 1576
40.2.11 PMA_LPIMODE.indication ... 1576
40.2.12 PMA_LPIREQ.request ... 1577

40.2.13 PMA_REMLPIREQ.request ... 1577
40.2.14 PMA_UPDATE.indication ... 1578
40.2.15 PMA_REMUPDATE.request ... 1578
40.3 Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS) ... 1579
40.3.1 PCS functions ... 1580
40.3.2 Stream structure ... 1596
40.3.3 State variables ... 1596
40.3.4 State diagrams ... 1601
40.4 Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) sublayer ... 1607
40.4.1 PMA functional specifications ... 1607
40.4.2 PMA functions ... 1608
40.4.3 MDI ... 1611
40.4.4 Automatic MDI/MDI-X Configuration ... 1611
40.4.5 State variables ... 1612
40.4.6 State Diagrams ... 1617
40.5 Management interface ... 1620
40.5.1 Support for Auto-Negotiation ... 1620
40.5.2 MASTER-SLAVE configuration resolution ... 1625
40.6 PMA electrical specifications ... 1627
40.6.1 PMA-to-MDI interface tests ... 1627
40.7 Link segment characteristics ... 1648
40.7.1 Cabling system characteristics ... 1648
40.7.2 Link transmission parameters ... 1649
40.7.3 Coupling parameters ... 1649
40.7.4 Delay ... 1651
40.7.5 Noise environment ... 1651
40.7.6 External coupled noise ... 1652
40.8 MDI specification ... 1652
40.8.1 MDI connectors ... 1652
40.8.2 Crossover function ... 1653
40.8.3 MDI electrical specifications ... 1654
40.9 Environmental specifications ... 1656
40.9.1 General safety ... 1656
40.9.2 Network safety ... 1656
40.9.3 Environment ... 1657
40.10 PHY labeling ... 1657
40.11 Delay constraints ... 1658
40.11.1 MDI to GMII delay constraints ... 1658
40.11.2 DTE delay constraints (half duplex only) ... 1659
40.11.3 Carrier de-assertion/assertion constraint (half duplex mode) ... 1659
40.12 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 40—Physical coding sublayer (PCS), physical medium attachment (PMA) sublayer and baseband medium, type 1000BASE-T ... 1660
40.12.1 Identification ... 1660
40.12.2 Major capabilities/options ... 1660
40.12.3 Clause conventions ... 1661
40.12.4 Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS) ... 1661
40.12.5 Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) ... 1665
40.12.6 Management interface ... 1667
40.12.7 PMA Electrical Specifications ... 1669
40.12.8 Characteristics of the link segment ... 1675
40.12.9 MDI requirements ... 1676
40.12.10 General safety and environmental requirements ... 1678
40.12.11 Timing requirements ... 1679

41. Repeater for 1000 Mb/s baseband networks ... 1680

41.1 Overview ... 1680
41.1.1 Scope ... 1680
41.1.2 Application perspective ... 1681
41.1.3 Relationship to PHY ... 1681
41.2 Repeater functional specifications ... 1681
41.2.1 Repeater functions ... 1682
41.2.2 Detailed repeater functions and state diagrams ... 1686
41.3 Repeater electrical specifications ... 1694
41.3.1 Electrical isolation ... 1694
41.4 Environmental specifications ... 1694
41.4.1 General safety ... 1694
41.4.2 Network safety ... 1694
41.4.3 Electrical isolation ... 1695
41.4.4 Reliability ... 1695
41.4.5 Environment ... 1696
41.5 Repeater labeling ... 1696
41.6 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 41, Repeater for 1000 Mb/s baseband networks ... 1696
41.6.1 Introduction ... 1696
41.6.2 Identification ... 1697
41.6.3 Major capabilities/options ... 1697
41.6.4 PICS proforma tables for the Repeater for 1000 Mb/s baseband networks ... 1698

42. System considerations for multisegment 1000 Mb/s networks ... 1705

42.1 Overview ... 1705
42.1.1 Single collision domain multisegment networks ... 1706
42.1.2 Repeater usage ... 1707
42.2 Transmission System Model 1 ... 1707
42.3 Transmission System Model 2 ... 1707
42.3.1 Round-trip collision delay ... 1708
42.4 Full duplex 1000 Mb/s topology limitations ... 1711

43. Content moved to IEEE Std 802.1AX-2008 ... 1712

44. Introduction to 10 Gb/s baseband networks ... 1713

44.1 Overview ... 1713
44.1.1 Scope ... 1713
44.1.2 Objectives ... 1713
44.1.3 Relationship of 10 Gigabit Ethernet to the ISO OSI reference model ... 1713
44.1.4 Summary of 10 Gigabit Ethernet sublayers ... 1715
44.1.5 Management ... 1717
44.2 State diagrams ... 1717
44.3 Delay constraints ... 1717
44.4 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma ... 1719

45. Management Data Input/Output (MDIO) Interface ... 1720

45.1 Overview ... 1720
45.1.1 Summary of major concepts ... 1720
45.1.2 Application ... 1720

45.2 MDIO Interface registers ... 1721
45.2.1 PMA/PMD registers ... 1724
45.2.2 WIS registers ... 1949
45.2.3 PCS registers ... 1966
45.2.4 PHY XS registers ... 2044
45.2.5 DTE XS registers ... 2066
45.2.6 TC registers ... 2088
45.2.7 Auto-Negotiation registers ... 2097
45.2.8 OFDM PMA/PMD registers ... 2131
45.2.9 Power Unit registers ... 2137
45.2.10 Clause 22 extension registers ... 2142
45.2.11 Vendor specific MMD 1 registers ... 2144
45.2.12 Vendor specific MMD 2 registers ... 2145
45.3 Management frame structure ... 2147
45.3.1 IDLE (idle condition) ... 2148
45.3.2 PRE (preamble) ... 2148
45.3.3 ST (start of frame) ... 2148
45.3.4 OP (operation code) ... 2148
45.3.5 PRTAD (port address) ... 2148
45.3.6 DEVAD (device address) ... 2148
45.3.7 TA (turnaround) ... 2148
45.3.8 ADDRESS / DATA ... 2148
45.4 Electrical interface ... 2149
45.4.1 Electrical specification ... 2149
45.4.2 Timing specification ... 2149
45.5 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 45, Management Data Input/Output (MDIO) Interface ... 2151
45.5.1 Introduction ... 2151
45.5.2 Identification ... 2151
45.5.3 PICS proforma tables for the Management Data Input Output (MDIO) Interface ... 2152

46. Reconciliation Sublayer (RS) and 10 Gigabit Media Independent Interface (XGMII) ... 2204

46.1 Overview ... 2204
46.1.1 Summary of major concepts ... 2205
46.1.2 Application ... 2205
46.1.3 Rate of operation ... 2205
46.1.4 Delay constraints ... 2206
46.1.5 Allocation of functions ... 2206
46.1.6 XGMII structure ... 2206
46.1.7 Mapping of XGMII signals to PLS service primitives ... 2207
46.2 XGMII data stream ... 2210
46.2.1 Inter-frame <inter-frame> ... 2210
46.2.2 Preamble <preamble> and start of frame delimiter <sfd> ... 2210
46.2.3 Data <data> ... 2211
46.2.4 End of frame delimiter <efd> ... 2211
46.2.5 Definition of Start of Packet and End of Packet Delimiters ... 2211
46.3 XGMII functional specifications ... 2211
46.3.1 Transmit ... 2212
46.3.2 Receive ... 2216
46.3.3 Error and fault handling ... 2219
46.3.4 Link fault signaling ... 2220
46.4 LPI assertion and detection ... 2222
46.4.1 LPI messages ... 2223

46.4.2 Transmit LPI state diagram ... 2223
46.4.3 Considerations for transmit system behavior ... 2225
46.4.4 Considerations for receive system behavior ... 2225
46.5 XGMII electrical characteristics ... 2225
46.6 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 46, Reconciliation Sublayer (RS) and 10 Gigabit Media Independent Interface (XGMII) ... 2227
46.6.1 Introduction ... 2227
46.6.2 Identification ... 2227
46.6.3 PICS proforma tables for Reconciliation Sublayer and 10 Gigabit Media Independent Interface ... 2228

47. XGMII Extender Sublayer (XGXS) and 10 Gigabit Attachment Unit Interface (XAUI) ... 2233

47.1 Overview ... 2233
47.1.1 Summary of major concepts ... 2234
47.1.2 Application ... 2234
47.1.3 Rate of operation ... 2234
47.1.4 Allocation of functions ... 2235
47.1.5 Global signal detect function ... 2235
47.1.6 Global transmit disable function ... 2235
47.2 Functional specifications ... 2235
47.2.1 PCS and PMA functionality ... 2235
47.2.2 Delay constraints ... 2236
47.3 XAUI Electrical characteristics ... 2236
47.3.1 Signal levels ... 2236
47.3.2 Signal paths ... 2236
47.3.3 Driver characteristics ... 2237
47.3.4 Receiver characteristics ... 2239
47.3.5 Interconnect characteristics ... 2241
47.4 Electrical measurement requirements ... 2242
47.4.1 Compliance interconnect definition ... 2242
47.4.2 Eye template measurements ... 2243
47.4.3 Jitter test requirements ... 2244
47.5 Environmental specifications ... 2244
47.6 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 47, XGMII Extender (XGMII) and 10 Gigabit Attachment Unit Interface (XAUI) ... 2245
47.6.1 Introduction ... 2245
47.6.2 Identification ... 2245
47.6.3 Major capabilities/options ... 2246
47.6.4 PICS proforma tables for XGXS and XAUI ... 2246

48. Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS) and Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) sublayer, type 10GBASE-X ... 2248

48.1 Overview ... 2248
48.1.1 Objectives ... 2248
48.1.2 Relationship of 10GBASE-X to other standards ... 2249
48.1.3 Summary of 10GBASE-X sublayers ... 2249
48.1.4 Rate of operation ... 2250
48.1.5 Allocation of functions ... 2250
48.1.6 Inter-sublayer interfaces ... 2251
48.1.7 Functional block diagram ... 2251
48.1.8 Special symbols ... 2252
48.2 Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS) ... 2252

48.2.1 PCS service interface (XGMII) ... 2252
48.2.2 Functions within the PCS ... 2252
48.2.3 Use of code-groups ... 2253
48.2.4 Ordered sets and special code-groups ... 2255
48.2.5 Management function requirements ... 2261
48.2.6 Detailed functions and state diagrams ... 2262
48.2.7 Auto-Negotiation for Backplane Ethernet ... 2279
48.3 Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) sublayer ... 2279
48.3.1 Functions within the PMA ... 2280
48.3.2 Service interface ... 2281
48.3.3 Loopback mode ... 2282
48.3.4 Test functions ... 2282
48.4 Compatibility considerations ... 2282
48.5 Delay constraints ... 2282
48.6 Environmental specifications ... 2283
48.7 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS) and Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) sublayer, type 10GBASE-X ... 2284
48.7.1 Introduction ... 2284
48.7.2 Identification ... 2284
48.7.3 Major capabilities/options ... 2285
48.7.4 PICS proforma tables for the PCS and PMA sublayer, type 10GBASE-X ... 2285

49. Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS) for 64B/66B, type 10GBASE-R ... 2288

49.1 Overview ... 2288
49.1.1 Scope ... 2288
49.1.2 Objectives ... 2288
49.1.3 Relationship of 10GBASE-R to other standards ... 2288
49.1.4 Summary of 10GBASE-R and 10GBASE-W sublayers ... 2289
49.1.5 Inter-sublayer interfaces ... 2291
49.1.6 Functional block diagram ... 2292
49.2 Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS) ... 2293
49.2.1 PCS service interface (XGMII) ... 2293
49.2.2 Functions within the PCS ... 2293
49.2.3 Use of blocks ... 2294
49.2.4 64B/66B transmission code ... 2294
49.2.5 Transmit process ... 2300
49.2.6 Scrambler ... 2300
49.2.7 Gearbox ... 2301
49.2.8 Test-pattern generators ... 2301
49.2.9 Block synchronization ... 2302
49.2.10 Descrambler ... 2302
49.2.11 Receive process ... 2302
49.2.12 Test-pattern checker ... 2303
49.2.13 Detailed functions and state diagrams ... 2304
49.2.14 PCS Management ... 2312
49.2.15 Delay constraints ... 2313
49.2.16 Auto-Negotiation for Backplane Ethernet ... 2314
49.3 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 49, Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS) type 10GBASE-R ... 2318
49.3.1 Introduction ... 2318
49.3.2 Identification ... 2318
49.3.3 Major capabilities/options ... 2319
49.3.4 PICS Proforma Tables for PCS, type 10GBASE-R ... 2319

49.3.5 Test-pattern modes ... 2320
49.3.6 Management ... 2321

50. WAN Interface Sublayer (WIS), type 10GBASE-W ... 2324

50.1 Overview ... 2324
50.1.1 Scope ... 2324
50.1.2 Objectives ... 2325
50.1.3 Relationship to other sublayers ... 2326
50.1.4 Summary of functions ... 2326
50.1.5 Sublayer interfaces ... 2327
50.1.6 Functional block diagram ... 2327
50.1.7 Notational conventions ... 2327
50.2 WIS Service Interface ... 2328
50.2.1 WIS_UNITDATA.request ... 2328
50.2.2 WIS_UNITDATA.indication ... 2329
50.2.3 WIS_SIGNAL.request ... 2329
50.2.4 WIS_SIGNAL.indication ... 2330
50.3 Functions within the WIS ... 2330
50.3.1 Payload mapping and data-unit delineation ... 2332
50.3.2 WIS frame generation ... 2334
50.3.3 Scrambling ... 2340
50.3.4 Octet and frame delineation ... 2341
50.3.5 Error propagation ... 2341
50.3.6 Mapping between WIS and PMA ... 2342
50.3.7 WIS data delay constraints ... 2343
50.3.8 WIS test-pattern generator and checker ... 2344
50.3.9 Loopback ... 2347
50.3.10 Link status ... 2347
50.3.11 Management interface ... 2347
50.4 Synchronization state diagram ... 2349
50.4.1 State diagram variables ... 2349
50.4.2 State diagram ... 2351
50.4.3 Parameter values ... 2353
50.5 Environmental specifications ... 2353
50.6 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 50, WAN Interface Sublayer (WIS), type 10GBASE-W ... 2355
50.6.1 Introduction ... 2355
50.6.2 Identification ... 2355
50.6.3 Major capabilities/options ... 2356
50.6.4 PICS proforma tables for the WAN Interface Sublayer (WIS), type 10GBASE-W ... 2356

51. Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) sublayer, type Serial ... 2361

51.1 Overview ... 2361
51.1.1 Scope ... 2361
51.1.2 Summary of functions ... 2361
51.2 PMA Service Interface ... 2362
51.2.1 PMA_UNITDATA.request ... 2362
51.2.2 PMA_UNITDATA.indication ... 2363
51.2.3 PMA_SIGNAL.indication ... 2363
51.2.4 PMA_RXMODE.request ... 2364
51.2.5 PMA_TXMODE.request ... 2364
51.2.6 PMA_ENERGY.indication ... 2364

51.3 Functions within the PMA ... 2365
51.3.1 PMA transmit function ... 2365
51.3.2 PMA receive function ... 2365
51.3.3 Delay Constraints ... 2365
51.4 Sixteen-Bit Interface (XSBI) ... 2366
51.4.1 Required signals ... 2367
51.4.2 Optional Signals ... 2369
51.5 General electrical characteristics of the XSBI ... 2370
51.5.1 DC characteristics ... 2370
51.5.2 Valid signal levels ... 2370
51.5.3 Rise and fall time definition ... 2371
51.5.4 Output load ... 2371
51.6 XSBI transmit interface electrical characteristics ... 2371
51.6.1 XSBI transmit interface timing ... 2371
51.6.2 XSBI PMA_TX_CLK and PMA_TXCLK_SRC Specification ... 2373
51.7 XSBI receive interface electrical characteristics ... 2374
51.7.1 XSBI receive interface timing ... 2374
51.7.2 XSBI PMA_RX_CLK specification ... 2376
51.8 PMA loopback mode (optional) ... 2376
51.9 Environmental specifications ... 2377
51.10 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 51, Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) sublayer, type Serial ... 2378
51.10.1 Introduction ... 2378
51.10.2 Identification ... 2378
51.10.3 Major capabilities/options ... 2379
51.10.4 PICS proforma tables for the PMA Interface Sublayer, type Serial ... 2379

52. Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and baseband medium, type 10GBASE-S (short wavelength serial), 10GBASE-L (long wavelength serial), and 10GBASE-E (extra long wavelength serial) ... 2381

52.1 Overview ... 2381
52.1.1 Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer service interface ... 2382
52.2 Delay constraints ... 2384
52.3 PMD MDIO function mapping ... 2384
52.4 PMD functional specifications ... 2385
52.4.1 PMD block diagram ... 2385
52.4.2 PMD Transmit function ... 2385
52.4.3 PMD Receive function ... 2385
52.4.4 PMD Signal Detect function ... 2385
52.4.5 PMD_reset function ... 2386
52.4.6 PMD_fault function ... 2386
52.4.7 PMD_global_transmit_disable function ... 2386
52.4.8 PMD_transmit_fault function ... 2387
52.4.9 PMD_receive_fault function ... 2387
52.5 PMD to MDI optical specifications for 10GBASE-S ... 2387
52.5.1 10GBASE-S transmitter optical specifications ... 2388
52.5.2 10GBASE-S receive optical specifications ... 2390
52.5.3 Illustrative 10GBASE-S link power budgets ... 2390
52.6 PMD to MDI optical specifications for 10GBASE-L ... 2390
52.6.1 10GBASE-L transmitter optical specifications ... 2391
52.6.2 10GBASE-L receive optical specifications ... 2393
52.6.3 Illustrative 10GBASE-L link power budgets ... 2393
52.7 PMD to MDI optical specifications for 10GBASE-E ... 2394

52.7.1 10GBASE-E transmitter optical specifications ... 2395
52.7.2 10GBASE-E receive optical specifications ... 2396
52.7.3 Illustrative 10GBASE-E link power budgets ... 2396
52.8 Jitter specifications for 10GBASE-R and 10GBASE-W ... 2396
52.8.1 Sinusoidal jitter for receiver conformance test ... 2397
52.9 Optical measurement requirements ... 2398
52.9.1 Test patterns ... 2398
52.9.2 Center wavelength, spectral width, and side mode suppression ratio (SMSR) measurements ... 2400
52.9.3 Average optical power measurements ... 2400
52.9.4 Extinction ratio measurements ... 2400
52.9.5 Optical modulation amplitude (OMA) test procedure ... 2400
52.9.6 Relative intensity noise optical modulation amplitude (RINxOMA) measuring procedure ... 2401
52.9.7 Transmitter optical waveform ... 2403
52.9.8 Receiver sensitivity measurements ... 2404
52.9.9 Stressed receiver conformance test ... 2405
52.9.10 Transmitter and dispersion penalty measurement ... 2410
52.9.11 Measurement of the receiver 3 dB electrical upper cutoff frequency ... 2412
52.10 Environmental specifications ... 2413
52.10.1 General safety ... 2413
52.10.2 Laser safety ... 2413
52.10.3 Installation ... 2413
52.11 Environment ... 2413
52.11.1 Electromagnetic emission ... 2413
52.11.2 Temperature, humidity, and handling ... 2414
52.12 PMD labeling requirements ... 2414
52.13 Fiber optic cabling model ... 2414
52.14 Characteristics of the fiber optic cabling (channel) ... 2415
52.14.1 Optical fiber and cable ... 2415
52.14.2 Optical fiber connection ... 2415
52.14.3 10GBASE-E attenuator management ... 2416
52.14.4 Medium Dependent Interface (MDI) requirements ... 2417
52.15 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 52, Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and baseband medium, type 10GBASE-S (short wavelength serial), 10GBASE-L (long wavelength serial), and 10GBASE-E (extra long wavelength serial) ... 2418
52.15.1 Introduction ... 2418
52.15.2 Identification ... 2418
52.15.3 PICS proforma tables for Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and baseband medium, types 10GBASE-R and 10GBASE-W ... 2420

53. Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and baseband medium, type 10GBASE-LX4 ... 2425

53.1 Overview ... 2425
53.1.1 Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) service interface ... 2425
53.1.2 PMD_UNITDATA.request ... 2425
53.1.3 PMD_UNITDATA.indication ... 2426
53.1.4 PMD_SIGNAL.indication ... 2427
53.2 Delay constraints ... 2427
53.3 PMD MDIO function mapping ... 2427
53.4 PMD functional specifications ... 2428
53.4.1 PMD block diagram ... 2428
53.4.2 PMD transmit function ... 2429

53.4.3 PMD receive function ... 2430
53.4.4 Global PMD signal detect function ... 2430
53.4.5 PMD lane by lane signal detect function ... 2430
53.4.6 PMD reset function ... 2431
53.4.7 Global PMD transmit disable function ... 2431
53.4.8 PMD lane by lane transmit disable function ... 2431
53.4.9 PMD fault function ... 2431
53.4.10 PMD transmit fault function (optional) ... 2431
53.4.11 PMD receive fault function (optional) ... 2431
53.5 Wavelength-division multiplexed-lane assignments ... 2431
53.6 Operating ranges for 10GBASE-LX4 PMD ... 2431
53.7 PMD to MDI optical specifications for 10GBASE-LX4 ... 2433
53.7.1 Transmitter optical specifications ... 2433
53.7.2 Receive optical specifications ... 2434
53.7.3 Illustrative 10GBASE-LX4 link power budget and penalties ... 2434
53.8 Jitter specifications for each lane of the 10GBASE-LX4 PMD ... 2434
53.8.1 Transmit jitter specification ... 2434
53.8.2 Receive jitter tolerance specification ... 2436
53.9 Optical measurement requirements ... 2438
53.9.1 Wavelength range measurements ... 2438
53.9.2 Optical power measurements ... 2439
53.9.3 Source spectral window measurements ... 2439
53.9.4 Extinction ratio measurements ... 2439
53.9.5 Optical Modulation Amplitude (OMA) measurements ... 2439
53.9.6 Relative Intensity Noise [RIN12(OMA)] ... 2439
53.9.7 Transmitter optical waveform (transmit eye) ... 2439
53.9.8 Transmit rise/fall characteristics ... 2441
53.9.9 Receive sensitivity measurements ... 2441
53.9.10 Transmitter jitter conformance (per lane) ... 2441
53.9.11 Receive sensitivity measurements ... 2443
53.9.12 Stressed receiver conformance test ... 2443
53.9.13 Measurement of the receiver 3 dB electrical upper cutoff frequency ... 2445
53.9.14 Conformance test signal at TP3 for receiver testing ... 2446
53.9.15 Receiver test suite for WDM conformance testing ... 2448
53.10 Environmental specifications ... 2450
53.10.1 General safety ... 2450
53.10.2 Laser safety ... 2450
53.10.3 Installation ... 2451
53.11 Environment ... 2451
53.11.1 Electromagnetic emission ... 2451
53.11.2 Temperature, humidity, and handling ... 2451
53.12 PMD labeling requirements ... 2451
53.13 Fiber optic cabling model ... 2452
53.14 Characteristics of the fiber optic cabling (channel) ... 2452
53.14.1 Optical fiber and cable ... 2452
53.14.2 Optical fiber connection ... 2453
53.14.3 Medium Dependent Interface (MDI) ... 2454
53.15 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 53, Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and baseband medium, type 10GBASE-LX4 ... 2455
53.15.1 Introduction ... 2455
53.15.2 Identification ... 2455
53.15.3 Major capabilities/options ... 2456
53.15.4 PICS proforma tables for 10GBASE-LX4 and baseband medium ... 2457

54. Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and baseband medium, type 10GBASE-CX4 2464

54.1 Overview 2464
54.2 Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) service interface 2465
54.3 Delay constraints 2465
54.4 PMD MDIO function mapping 2465
54.5 PMD functional specifications 2465
54.5.1 Link block diagram 2465
54.5.2 PMD Transmit function 2466
54.5.3 PMD Receive function 2466
54.5.4 Global PMD signal detect function 2466
54.5.5 PMD lane-by-lane signal detect function 2467
54.5.6 Global PMD transmit disable function 2467
54.5.7 PMD lane-by-lane transmit disable function 2467
54.5.8 Loopback mode 2468
54.5.9 PMD fault function 2468
54.5.10 PMD transmit fault function 2468
54.5.11 PMD receive fault function 2468
54.6 MDI Electrical specifications for 10GBASE-CX4 2468
54.6.1 Signal levels 2468
54.6.2 Signal paths 2469
54.6.3 Transmitter characteristics 2469
54.6.4 Receiver characteristics 2474
54.7 Cable assembly characteristics 2475
54.7.1 Characteristic impedance and reference impedance 2476
54.7.2 Cable assembly insertion loss 2476
54.7.3 Cable assembly return loss 2477
54.7.4 Near-End Crosstalk (NEXT) 2478
54.7.5 Far-End Crosstalk (FEXT) 2479
54.7.6 Shielding 2481
54.7.7 Crossover function 2481
54.8 MDI specification 2482
54.8.1 MDI connectors 2482
54.8.2 Connector pin assignments 2483
54.9 Environmental specifications 2483
54.10 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 54, Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and baseband medium, type 10GBASE-CX4 2484
54.10.1 Introduction 2484
54.10.2 Identification 2484
54.10.3 PICS proforma tables for 10GBASE-CX4 and baseband medium 2485
54.10.4 Major capabilities/options 2485

55. Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS), Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) sublayer and baseband medium, type 10GBASE-T 2491

55.1 Overview 2491
55.1.1 Objectives 2491
55.1.2 Relationship of 10GBASE-T to other standards 2492
55.1.3 Operation of 10GBASE-T 2492
55.1.4 Signaling 2498
55.1.5 Interfaces 2498
55.1.6 Conventions in this clause 2499
55.2 10GBASE-T service primitives and interfaces 2499
55.2.1 Technology Dependent Interface 2499

55.2.2 PMA service interface ... 2500
55.3 Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS) ... 2508
55.3.1 PCS service interface (XGMII) ... 2508
55.3.2 PCS functions ... 2508
55.3.3 Test-pattern generators ... 2524
55.3.4 PMA training side-stream scrambler polynomials ... 2525
55.3.5 LPI signaling ... 2527
55.3.6 Detailed functions and state diagrams ... 2530
55.3.7 PCS management ... 2535
55.4 Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) sublayer ... 2543
55.4.1 PMA functional specifications ... 2543
55.4.2 PMA functions ... 2544
55.4.3 MDI ... 2557
55.4.4 Automatic MDI/MDI-X configuration ... 2558
55.4.5 State variables ... 2559
55.4.6 State diagrams ... 2564
55.5 PMA electrical specifications ... 2569
55.5.1 Electrical isolation ... 2569
55.5.2 Test modes ... 2569
55.5.3 Transmitter electrical specifications ... 2573
55.5.4 Receiver electrical specifications ... 2575
55.6 Management interfaces ... 2577
55.6.1 Support for Auto-Negotiation ... 2577
55.6.2 MASTER-SLAVE configuration resolution ... 2580
55.7 Link segment characteristics ... 2582
55.7.1 Cabling system characteristics ... 2583
55.7.2 Link segment transmission parameters ... 2583
55.7.3 Coupling parameters between link segments ... 2587
55.7.4 Noise environment ... 2598
55.8 MDI specification ... 2599
55.8.1 MDI connectors ... 2599
55.8.2 MDI electrical specifications ... 2599
55.9 Environmental specifications ... 2602
55.9.1 General safety ... 2602
55.9.2 Network safety ... 2602
55.9.3 Installation and maintenance guidelines ... 2602
55.9.4 Telephone voltages ... 2603
55.9.5 Electromagnetic compatibility ... 2603
55.9.6 Temperature and humidity ... 2603
55.10 PHY labeling ... 2603
55.11 Delay constraints ... 2603
55.12 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 55—Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS), Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) sublayer and baseband medium, type 10GBASE-T ... 2605
55.12.1 Identification ... 2605
55.12.2 Major capabilities/options ... 2606
55.12.3 Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS) ... 2606
55.12.4 Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) ... 2608
55.12.5 Management interface ... 2610
55.12.6 PMA electrical specifications ... 2611
55.12.7 Characteristics of the link segment ... 2612
55.12.8 MDI requirements ... 2613
55.12.9 General safety and environmental requirements ... 2614
55.12.10 Timing requirements ... 2614

56. Introduction to Ethernet for subscriber access networks 2615

56.1 Overview 2615
56.1.1 Summary of P2P sublayers 2622
56.1.2 Summary of P2MP sublayers 2622
56.1.3 Physical Layer signaling systems 2624
56.1.4 Management 2630
56.1.5 Unidirectional transmission 2633
56.2 State diagrams 2634
56.3 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma 2634

57. Operations, Administration, and Maintenance (OAM) 2635

57.1 Overview 2635
57.1.1 Scope 2635
57.1.2 Summary of objectives and major concepts 2635
57.1.3 Summary of non-objectives 2636
57.1.4 Positioning of OAM within the IEEE 802.3 architecture 2636
57.1.5 Compatibility considerations 2636
57.1.6 State diagram conventions 2637
57.2 Functional specifications 2637
57.2.1 Interlayer service interfaces 2637
57.2.2 Principles of operation 2638
57.2.3 Instances of the MAC data service interface 2638
57.2.4 Responsibilities of OAM client 2638
57.2.5 OAM client interactions 2639
57.2.6 Instances of the OAM internal service interface 2642
57.2.7 Internal block diagram 2642
57.2.8 OAM internal interactions 2643
57.2.9 Modes 2644
57.2.10 OAM events 2645
57.2.11 OAM remote loopback 2646
57.2.12 Unidirectional OAM operation 2648
57.3 Detailed functions and state diagrams 2648
57.3.1 State diagram variables 2649
57.3.2 Control 2653
57.3.3 Multiplexer 2657
57.3.4 Parser 2658
57.4 OAMPDUs 2659
57.4.1 Ordering and representation of octets 2659
57.4.2 Structure 2660
57.4.3 OAMPDU descriptions 2661
57.5 OAM TLVs 2665
57.5.1 Parsing 2665
57.5.2 Information TLVs 2666
57.5.3 Link Event TLVs 2669
57.6 Variables 2674
57.6.1 Variable Descriptors 2674
57.6.2 Variable Containers 2674
57.6.3 Parsing 2676
57.6.4 Variable Branch/Leaf examples 2677
57.6.5 Variable Indications 2677
57.7 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 57, Operations, Administration, and Maintenance (OAM) 2679

57.7.1 Introduction ... 2679
57.7.2 Identification ... 2679
57.7.3 PICS proforma tables for Operation, Administration, and Maintenance (OAM) ... 2680
57.7.4 Link Event TLVs ... 2684
57.7.5 Variables Descriptors and Containers ... 2685

58. Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and medium, type 100BASE-LX10 (Long Wavelength) and 100BASE-BX10 (Bi-Directional Long Wavelength) ... 2686

58.1 Overview ... 2686
58.1.1 Goals and objectives ... 2686
58.1.2 Positioning of this PMD set within the IEEE 802.3 architecture ... 2687
58.1.3 Terminology and conventions ... 2687
58.1.4 Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer service interface ... 2687
58.2 PMD functional specifications ... 2688
58.2.1 PMD block diagram ... 2689
58.2.2 PMD transmit function ... 2689
58.2.3 PMD receive function ... 2689
58.2.4 100BASE-LX10 and 100BASE-BX10 signal detect function ... 2690
58.3 PMD to MDI optical specifications for 100BASE-LX10 ... 2690
58.3.1 Transmitter optical specifications ... 2690
58.3.2 Receiver optical specifications ... 2691
58.4 PMD to MDI optical specifications for 100BASE-BX10 ... 2692
58.4.1 Transmit optical specifications ... 2692
58.4.2 Receiver optical specifications ... 2693
58.5 Illustrative 100BASE-LX10 and 100BASE-BX10 channels and penalties ... 2694
58.6 Jitter at TP1 and TP4 for 100BASE-LX10 and 100BASE-BX10 ... 2694
58.7 Optical measurement requirements ... 2695
58.7.1 Test patterns ... 2695
58.7.2 Wavelength and spectral width measurements ... 2698
58.7.3 Optical power measurements ... 2698
58.7.4 Extinction ratio measurements ... 2698
58.7.5 Optical modulation amplitude (OMA) measurements (optional) ... 2698
58.7.6 OMA relationship to extinction ratio and power measurements ... 2699
58.7.7 Relative intensity noise optical modulation amplitude (RINxOMA) measuring procedure ... 2699
58.7.8 Transmitter optical waveform (transmit eye) ... 2700
58.7.9 Transmitter and dispersion penalty (TDP) measurement ... 2702
58.7.10 Receiver sensitivity measurements ... 2705
58.7.11 Stressed receiver conformance test ... 2706
58.7.12 Jitter measurements ... 2711
58.8 Environmental, safety, and labeling ... 2712
58.8.1 General safety ... 2712
58.8.2 Laser safety ... 2712
58.8.3 Installation ... 2712
58.8.4 Environment ... 2712
58.8.5 PMD labeling requirements ... 2712
58.9 Characteristics of the fiber optic cabling ... 2713
58.9.1 Fiber optic cabling model ... 2713
58.9.2 Optical fiber and cable ... 2713
58.9.3 Optical fiber connection ... 2714
58.9.4 Medium Dependent Interface (MDI) ... 2714

58.10 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 58, Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and medium, type 100BASE-LX10 (Long Wavelength) and 100BASE-BX10 (Bi-Directional Long Wavelength) 2715
58.10.1 Introduction 2715
58.10.2 Identification 2715
58.10.3 PICS proforma tables for Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and medium, type 100BASE-LX10 and 100BASE-BX10 2716

59. Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and medium, type 1000BASE-LX10 (Long Wavelength) and 1000BASE-BX10 (Bi-Directional Long Wavelength) 2720

59.1 Overview 2720
59.1.1 Goals and objectives 2721
59.1.2 Positioning of 1000BASE-LX10 and 1000BASE-BX10 PMDs within the IEEE 802.3 architecture 2721
59.1.3 Terminology and conventions 2721
59.1.4 Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer service interface 2722
59.1.5 Delay constraints 2722
59.2 PMD functional specifications 2723
59.2.1 PMD block diagram 2723
59.2.2 PMD transmit function 2723
59.2.3 PMD receive function 2723
59.2.4 PMD signal detect function 2724
59.3 PMD to MDI optical specifications for 1000BASE-LX10 2724
59.3.1 Transmitter optical specifications 2725
59.3.2 Receiver optical specifications 2726
59.4 PMD to MDI optical specifications for 1000BASE-BX10-D and 1000BASE-BX10-U 2728
59.4.1 Transmit optical specifications 2728
59.4.2 Receiver optical specifications 2729
59.5 Illustrative 1000BASE-LX10 and 1000BASE-BX10 channels and penalties 2729
59.6 Jitter specifications 2729
59.7 Optical measurement requirements 2729
59.7.1 Test patterns 2730
59.7.2 Wavelength and spectral width measurements 2733
59.7.3 Optical power measurements 2734
59.7.4 Extinction ratio measurements 2734
59.7.5 OMA measurements (optional) 2734
59.7.6 OMA relationship to extinction ratio and power measurements 2734
59.7.7 Relative intensity noise optical modulation amplitude (RIN12OMA) 2734
59.7.8 Transmitter optical waveform (transmit eye) 2734
59.7.9 Transmit rise/fall characteristics 2735
59.7.10 Transmitter and dispersion penalty (TDP) 2735
59.7.11 Receive sensitivity measurements 2735
59.7.12 Total jitter measurements 2736
59.7.13 Deterministic or high probability jitter measurement 2736
59.7.14 Stressed receiver conformance test 2736
59.7.15 Measurement of the receiver 3 dB electrical upper cutoff frequency 2736
59.8 Environmental, safety, and labeling specifications 2737
59.8.1 General safety 2737
59.8.2 Laser safety 2737
59.8.3 Installation 2737
59.8.4 Environment 2737
59.8.5 PMD labeling requirements 2737
59.9 Characteristics of the fiber optic cabling 2738

59.9.1 Fiber optic cabling model 2738
59.9.2 Optical fiber and cable 2739
59.9.3 Optical fiber connection 2739
59.9.4 Medium Dependent Interface (MDI) 2740
59.9.5 Single-mode fiber offset-launch mode-conditioning patch cord for MMF operation of 1000BASE-LX10 2740
59.10 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 59, Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and medium, type 1000BASE-LX10 (Long Wavelength) and 1000BASE-BX10 (Bi-Directional Long Wavelength) 2742
59.10.1 Introduction 2742
59.10.2 Identification 2742
59.10.3 Major capabilities/options 2743

60. Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and medium, type 1000BASE-PX (long wavelength passive optical networks) 2747

60.1 Overview 2747
60.1.1 Goals and objectives 2747
60.1.2 Positioning of this PMD set within the IEEE 802.3 architecture 2747
60.1.3 Terminology and conventions 2748
60.1.4 Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer service interface 2748
60.1.5 Delay constraints 2749
60.2 PMD functional specifications 2750
60.2.1 PMD block diagram 2750
60.2.2 PMD transmit function 2750
60.2.3 PMD receive function 2751
60.2.4 PMD signal detect function 2751
60.2.5 PMD transmit enable function for ONU 2752
60.3 PMD to MDI optical specifications for 1000BASE-PX10-D and 1000BASE-PX10-U 2752
60.3.1 Transmitter optical specifications 2752
60.3.2 Receiver optical specifications 2754
60.4 PMD to MDI optical specifications for 1000BASE-PX20-D and 1000BASE-PX20-U 2755
60.4.1 Transmitter optical specifications 2756
60.4.2 Receiver optical specifications 2756
60.5 PMD to MDI optical specifications for 1000BASE-PX30-D and 1000BASE-PX30-U 2758
60.5.1 Transmitter optical specifications 2759
60.5.2 Receiver optical specifications 2760
60.6 PMD to MDI optical specifications for 1000BASE-PX40-D and 1000BASE-PX40-U 2760
60.6.1 Transmitter optical specifications 2762
60.6.2 Receiver optical specifications 2763
60.7 Illustrative 1000BASE-PX channels and penalties 2764
60.8 Jitter at TP1 to TP4 for 1000BASE-PX 2764
60.9 Optical measurement requirements 2764
60.9.1 Frame-based test patterns 2765
60.9.2 Wavelength, spectral width, and side mode suppression ratio (SMSR) measurements 2765
60.9.3 Optical power measurements 2765
60.9.4 Extinction ratio measurements 2765
60.9.5 OMA measurements (optional) 2766
60.9.6 OMA relationship to extinction ratio and power measurements 2766
60.9.7 Relative intensity noise optical modulation amplitude (RIN15OMA) 2766
60.9.8 Transmitter optical waveform (transmit eye) 2766
60.9.9 Transmitter and dispersion penalty (TDP) 2766
60.9.10 Receive sensitivity measurement 2767
60.9.11 Stressed receive conformance test 2767

60.9.12 Jitter measurements ... 2767
60.9.13 Other measurements ... 2767
60.10 Environmental, safety, and labeling ... 2771
60.10.1 General safety ... 2771
60.10.2 Laser safety ... 2771
60.10.3 Installation ... 2771
60.10.4 Environment ... 2771
60.10.5 PMD labeling requirements ... 2771
60.11 Characteristics of the fiber optic cabling ... 2772
60.11.1 Fiber optic cabling model ... 2772
60.11.2 Optical fiber and cable ... 2772
60.11.3 Optical fiber connection ... 2773
60.11.4 Medium Dependent Interface (MDI) ... 2773
60.12 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 60, Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and medium, type 1000BASE-PX (long wavelength passive optical networks) ... 2774
60.12.1 Introduction ... 2774
60.12.2 Identification ... 2774
60.12.3 Major capabilities/options ... 2775
60.12.4 PICS proforma tables for Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and medium, type 1000BASE-PX (long wavelength passive optical networks) ... 2776

61. Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS), Transmission Convergence (TC) sublayer, and common specifications, type 10PASS-TS and type 2BASE-TL ... 2782

61.1 Overview ... 2782
61.1.1 Scope ... 2782
61.1.2 Objectives ... 2783
61.1.3 Relation of 2BASE-TL and 10PASS-TS to other standards ... 2783
61.1.4 Summary ... 2784
61.1.5 Application of 2BASE-TL, 10PASS-TS ... 2786
61.2 PCS functional specifications ... 2791
61.2.1 MAC-PHY Rate Matching functional specifications ... 2791
61.2.2 PME Aggregation functional specifications ... 2794
61.2.3 PCS sublayer: Management entity signals ... 2803
61.3 TC sublayer functional specifications ... 2805
61.3.1 The g-interface ... 2806
61.3.2 The a(b)-interface ... 2807
61.3.3 TC functions ... 2808
61.4 Handshaking and PHY control specification for type 2BASE-TL and 10PASS-TS ... 2823
61.4.1 Overview ... 2823
61.4.2 Replacement of 1, “Scope” ... 2823
61.4.3 Changes to 6.1, “Description of signals” ... 2824
61.4.4 Changes to 9.4, “Standard information field (S)” ... 2824
61.4.5 Changes to 9.5, “Non-standard information field (NS)” ... 2825
61.4.6 Applicability of Annex A–B and Appendix I–VI ... 2825
61.4.7 PME Aggregation – remote access of PME Aggregation registers ... 2825
61.5 Link segment characteristics ... 2828
61.6 MDI specification ... 2829
61.7 System considerations ... 2829
61.8 Environmental specifications ... 2829
61.9 PHY labeling ... 2829

61.10 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 61, Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS), Transmission Convergence (TC) sublayer, and common specifications type 10PASS-TS, 2BASE-TL ... 2830
61.10.1 Introduction ... 2830
61.10.2 Identification ... 2830
61.10.3 Major capabilities/options ... 2831
61.10.4 PICS proforma tables for the Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS), Transmission Convergence (TC) sublayer, and common specifications type 10PASS-TS, 2BASE-TL ... 2831

62. Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) and Physical Medium Dependent (PMD), type 10PASS-TS ... 2839

62.1 Overview ... 2839
62.1.1 Scope ... 2839
62.1.2 Objectives ... 2839
62.1.3 Relation of 10PASS-TS to other standards ... 2839
62.1.4 Summary of Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) specification ... 2839
62.2 PMA functional specifications ... 2840
62.2.1 PMA functional diagram ... 2840
62.2.2 PMA functional specifications ... 2840
62.2.3 General exceptions ... 2841
62.2.4 Specific requirements and exceptions ... 2842
62.3 PMD functional specifications ... 2842
62.3.1 PMD Overview ... 2842
62.3.2 PMD functional specifications ... 2843
62.3.3 General exceptions ... 2843
62.3.4 Specific requirements and exceptions ... 2843
62.3.5 Transmission medium interface characteristics ... 2852
62.4 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 62, Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) and Physical Medium Dependent (PMD), type 10PASS-TS ... 2856
62.4.1 Introduction ... 2856
62.4.2 Identification ... 2856
62.4.3 Major capabilities/options ... 2857
62.4.4 PICS proforma tables for the Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) and Physical Medium Dependent (PMD), type 10PASS-TS ... 2857

63. Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) and Physical Medium Dependent (PMD), type 2BASE-TL ... 2861

63.1 2BASE-TL Overview ... 2861
63.1.1 Scope ... 2861
63.1.2 Objectives ... 2861
63.1.3 Relation of 2BASE-TL to other standards ... 2861
63.1.4 Summary of Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) specification ... 2861
63.1.5 Summary of Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) specification ... 2863
63.2 2BASE-TL PMA functional specifications ... 2864
63.2.1 General exceptions ... 2864
63.2.2 Specific requirements and exceptions ... 2864
63.3 2BASE-TL PMD functional specifications ... 2866
63.3.1 General exceptions ... 2866
63.3.2 Specific requirements and exceptions ... 2867
63.4 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 63, Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) and Physical Medium Dependent (PMD), type 2BASE-TL ... 2871

63.4.1 Introduction ... 2871
63.4.2 Identification ... 2871
63.4.3 Major capabilities/options ... 2872
63.4.4 PICS proforma tables for the Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) and Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayers, type 2BASE-TL ... 2872

64. Multipoint MAC Control ... 2874

64.1 Overview ... 2874
64.1.1 Goals and objectives ... 2875
64.1.2 Position of Multipoint MAC Control within the IEEE 802.3 hierarchy ... 2875
64.1.3 Functional block diagram ... 2877
64.1.4 Service interfaces ... 2878
64.1.5 State diagram conventions ... 2878
64.2 Multipoint MAC Control operation ... 2878
64.2.1 Principles of Multipoint MAC Control ... 2879
64.2.2 Multipoint transmission control, Control Parser, and Control Multiplexer ... 2881
64.3 Multipoint Control Protocol (MPCP) ... 2893
64.3.1 Principles of Multipoint Control Protocol ... 2893
64.3.2 Compatibility considerations ... 2893
64.3.3 Discovery Processing ... 2894
64.3.4 Report Processing ... 2907
64.3.5 Gate Processing ... 2911
64.3.6 MPCPDU structure and encoding ... 2919
64.4 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 64, Multipoint MAC Control ... 2928
64.4.1 Introduction ... 2928
64.4.2 Identification ... 2928
64.4.3 Major capabilities/options ... 2929
64.4.4 PICS proforma tables for Multipoint MAC Control ... 2929

65. Extensions of the Reconciliation Sublayer (RS) and Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS)/Physical Media Attachment (PMA) for 1000BASE-X for multipoint links and forward error correction ... 2932

65.1 Extensions of the Reconciliation Sublayer (RS) for point-to-point emulation ... 2932
65.1.1 Overview ... 2932
65.1.2 Principle of operation ... 2932
65.1.3 Functional specifications ... 2933
65.2 Extensions of the physical coding sublayer for data detection and forward error correction ... 2936
65.2.1 Overview ... 2936
65.2.2 Burst-mode operation ... 2937
65.2.3 Forward error correction ... 2941
65.3 Extensions to PMA for 1000BASE-PX ... 2954
65.3.1 Extensions for 1000BASE-PX-U ... 2954
65.3.2 Extensions for 1000BASE-PX-D ... 2955
65.3.3 Delay variation requirements ... 2955
65.4 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 65, Extensions of the Reconciliation Sublayer (RS) and Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS)/Physical Media Attachment (PMA) for 1000BASE-X for multipoint links and forward error correction ... 2956
65.4.1 Introduction ... 2956
65.4.2 Identification ... 2956
65.4.3 Major capabilities/options ... 2957

65.4.4 PICS proforma tables for Extensions of Reconciliation Sublayer (RS) and Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS)/Physical Media Attachment (PMA) for 1000BASE-X for multipoint links and forward error correction ... 2957

66. Extensions of the 10 Gb/s Reconciliation Sublayer (RS), 100BASE-X PHY, and 1000BASE-X PHY for unidirectional transport ... 2960

66.1 Modifications to the physical coding sublayer (PCS) and physical medium attachment (PMA) sublayer, type 100BASE-X ... 2960
66.1.1 Overview ... 2960
66.1.2 Functional specifications ... 2960
66.2 Modifications to the physical coding sublayer (PCS) and physical medium attachment (PMA) sublayer, type 1000BASE-X ... 2962
66.2.1 Overview ... 2962
66.2.2 Functional specifications ... 2962
66.3 Modifications to the reconciliation sublayer (RS) for P2P 10 Gb/s operation ... 2964
66.3.1 Overview ... 2964
66.3.2 Functional specifications ... 2964
66.4 Modifications to the RS for P2MP 10 Gb/s operation ... 2965
66.4.1 Overview ... 2965
66.4.2 Functional specifications ... 2965
66.5 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 66, Extensions of the 10 Gb/s Reconciliation Sublayer (RS), 100BASE-X PHY, and 1000BASE-X PHY for unidirectional transport ... 2967
66.5.1 Introduction ... 2967
66.5.2 Identification ... 2967
66.5.3 Major capabilities/options ... 2968
66.5.4 PICS proforma tables for Extensions of the 10 Gb/s Reconciliation Sublayer (RS), 100BASE-X PHY, and 1000BASE-X PHY for unidirectional transport ... 2968

67. System considerations for Ethernet subscriber access networks ... 2971

67.1 Overview ... 2971
67.2 Discussion and examples of EFM P2MP topologies ... 2973
67.2.1 Trade off between link span and split ratio for P2MP PON architecture ... 2973
67.2.2 Single splitter topology for P2MP PON architecture ... 2973
67.2.3 Tree-and-branch topology for P2MP PON architecture ... 2974
67.2.4 Interoperability between certain 1000BASE-PX10 and 1000BASE-PX20 ... 2974
67.3 Hybrid media topologies ... 2975
67.4 Topology limitations ... 2975
67.5 Deployment restrictions for subscriber access copper ... 2975
67.6 Operations, Administration, and Maintenance ... 2975
67.6.1 Unidirectional links ... 2976
67.6.2 Active and Passive modes ... 2976
67.6.3 Link status signaling in P2MP networks ... 2976

68. Physical medium dependent (PMD) sublayer type 10GBASE-LRM ... 2977

68.1 Overview ... 2977
68.1.1 Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer service interface ... 2977
68.2 Delay constraints ... 2977
68.3 PMD MDIO function mapping ... 2978
68.4 PMD functional specifications ... 2978
68.4.1 PMD block diagram ... 2978

68.4.2 PMD transmit function ... 2978
68.4.3 PMD receive function ... 2978
68.4.4 PMD signal detect function ... 2979
68.4.5 PMD_reset function ... 2979
68.4.6 PMD_fault function ... 2979
68.4.7 PMD_global_transmit_disable function ... 2979
68.4.8 PMD_transmit_fault function ... 2980
68.4.9 PMD_receive_fault function ... 2980
68.5 PMD to MDI optical specifications ... 2980
68.5.1 Transmitter optical specifications ... 2980
68.5.2 Characteristics of signal within, and at the receiving end of, a compliant 10GBASE-LRM channel ... 2980
68.5.3 Receiver optical specifications ... 2981
68.6 Definitions of optical parameters and measurement methods ... 2981
68.6.1 Test patterns and related subclauses for optical parameters ... 2981
68.6.2 Optical modulation amplitude (OMA) ... 2981
68.6.3 Extinction ratio measurement ... 2982
68.6.4 Relationship between OMA, extinction ratio and average power ... 2982
68.6.5 Transmitter optical waveform—transmitter eye mask ... 2982
68.6.6 Transmitter waveform and dispersion penalty (TWDP) ... 2984
68.6.7 Transmitter signal to noise ratio ... 2992
68.6.8 Transmitter uncorrelated jitter ... 2993
68.6.9 Comprehensive stressed receiver sensitivity and overload ... 2994
68.6.10 Simple stressed receiver sensitivity and overload (optional) ... 2999
68.6.11 Receiver jitter tolerance ... 2999
68.7 Safety, installation, environment, and labeling ... 3000
68.7.1 Safety ... 3000
68.7.2 Installation ... 3001
68.7.3 Environment ... 3001
68.7.4 PMD labeling ... 3001
68.8 Fiber optic cabling model ... 3001
68.9 Characteristics of the fiber optic cabling (channel) ... 3001
68.9.1 Optical fiber and cable ... 3001
68.9.2 Optical fiber connections ... 3001
68.9.3 Single-mode fiber offset-launch mode-conditioning patch cord ... 3002
68.10 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 68, Physical medium dependent (PMD) sublayer type 10GBASE-LRM ... 3003
68.10.1 Introduction ... 3003
68.10.2 Identification ... 3003
68.10.3 PICS proforma tables for physical medium dependent (PMD) sublayer type 10GBASE-LRM ... 3004

69. Introduction to Ethernet operation over electrical backplanes ... 3008

69.1 Overview ... 3008
69.1.1 Scope ... 3008
69.1.2 Relationship of Backplane Ethernet to the ISO OSI reference model ... 3008
69.2 Summary of Backplane Ethernet Sublayers ... 3013
69.2.1 Reconciliation sublayer and media independent interfaces ... 3013
69.2.2 Management interface ... 3013
69.2.3 Physical Layer signaling systems ... 3014
69.2.4 Auto-Negotiation ... 3015
69.2.5 Management ... 3016
69.2.6 Low-Power Idle ... 3016

69.3 Delay constraints ... 3016
69.4 State diagrams ... 3017
69.5 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma ... 3017

70. Physical Medium Dependent sublayer and baseband medium, type 1000BASE-KX ... 3019

70.1 Overview ... 3019
70.2 Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) service interface ... 3019
70.2.1 PMD_RXQUIET.request ... 3020
70.2.2 PMD_TXQUIET.request ... 3020
70.3 PCS requirements for Auto-Negotiation (AN) service interface ... 3020
70.4 Delay constraints ... 3020
70.5 PMD MDIO function mapping ... 3021
70.6 PMD functional specifications ... 3021
70.6.1 Link block diagram ... 3022
70.6.2 PMD transmit function ... 3022
70.6.3 PMD receive function ... 3022
70.6.4 PMD signal detect function ... 3022
70.6.5 PMD transmit disable function ... 3023
70.6.6 Loopback mode ... 3023
70.6.7 PMD fault function ... 3023
70.6.8 PMD transmit fault function ... 3023
70.6.9 PMD receive fault function ... 3023
70.6.10 PMD LPI function ... 3023
70.7 1000BASE-KX electrical characteristics ... 3024
70.7.1 Transmitter characteristics ... 3024
70.7.2 Receiver characteristics ... 3028
70.8 Interconnect characteristics ... 3030
70.9 Environmental specifications ... 3030
70.9.1 General safety ... 3030
70.9.2 Network safety ... 3030
70.9.3 Installation and maintenance guidelines ... 3030
70.9.4 Electromagnetic compatibility ... 3030
70.9.5 Temperature and humidity ... 3030
70.10 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 70, Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and baseband medium, type 1000BASE-KX ... 3031
70.10.1 Introduction ... 3031
70.10.2 Identification ... 3031
70.10.3 Major capabilities/options ... 3032
70.10.4 PICS proforma tables for Clause 70, Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and baseband medium, type 1000BASE-KX ... 3033

71. Physical Medium Dependent sublayer and baseband medium, type 10GBASE-KX4 ... 3036

71.1 Overview ... 3036
71.2 Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) service interface ... 3036
71.2.1 PMD_RXQUIET.request ... 3037
71.2.2 PMD_TXQUIET.request ... 3037
71.3 PCS requirements for Auto-Negotiation (AN) service interface ... 3037
71.4 Delay constraints ... 3038
71.5 PMD MDIO function mapping ... 3038
71.6 PMD functional specifications ... 3038
71.6.1 Link block diagram ... 3038
71.6.2 PMD Transmit function ... 3039

71.6.3 PMD Receive function ... 3040
71.6.4 Global PMD signal detect function ... 3040
71.6.5 PMD lane-by-lane signal detect function ... 3040
71.6.6 Global PMD transmit disable function ... 3040
71.6.7 PMD lane-by-lane transmit disable function ... 3040
71.6.8 Loopback mode ... 3041
71.6.9 PMD fault function ... 3041
71.6.10 PMD transmit fault function ... 3041
71.6.11 PMD receive fault function ... 3041
71.6.12 PMD LPI function ... 3041
71.7 Electrical characteristics for 10GBASE-KX4 ... 3042
71.7.1 Transmitter characteristics ... 3042
71.7.2 Receiver characteristics ... 3047
71.8 Interconnect characteristics ... 3049
71.9 Environmental specifications ... 3049
71.9.1 General safety ... 3049
71.9.2 Network safety ... 3049
71.9.3 Installation and maintenance guidelines ... 3049
71.9.4 Electromagnetic compatibility ... 3049
71.9.5 Temperature and humidity ... 3049
71.10 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 71, Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and baseband medium, type 10GBASE-KX4 ... 3050
71.10.1 Introduction ... 3050
71.10.2 Identification ... 3050
71.10.3 Major capabilities/options ... 3051
71.10.4 PICS proforma tables for Clause 71, Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and baseband medium, type 10GBASE-KX4 ... 3051

72. Physical Medium Dependent sublayer and baseband medium, type 10GBASE-KR ... 3057

72.1 Overview ... 3057
72.2 Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) service interface ... 3057
72.2.1 PMD_RX_MODE.request ... 3058
72.2.2 PMD_TX_MODE.request ... 3058
72.3 PCS requirements for Auto-Negotiation (AN) service interface ... 3059
72.4 Delay constraints ... 3059
72.5 PMD MDIO function mapping ... 3059
72.6 PMD functional specifications ... 3059
72.6.1 Link block diagram ... 3059
72.6.2 PMD transmit function ... 3060
72.6.3 PMD receive function ... 3060
72.6.4 PMD signal detect function ... 3061
72.6.5 PMD transmit disable function ... 3061
72.6.6 Loopback mode ... 3061
72.6.7 PMD_fault function ... 3062
72.6.8 PMD transmit fault function ... 3062
72.6.9 PMD receive fault function ... 3062
72.6.10 PMD control function ... 3062
72.6.11 PMD LPI function ... 3074
72.7 10GBASE-KR electrical characteristics ... 3075
72.7.1 Transmitter characteristics ... 3075
72.7.2 Receiver characteristics ... 3083
72.8 Interconnect characteristics ... 3085
72.9 Environmental specifications ... 3085

72.9.1 General safety ... 3085
72.9.2 Network safety ... 3085
72.9.3 Installation and maintenance guidelines ... 3085
72.9.4 Electromagnetic compatibility ... 3085
72.9.5 Temperature and humidity ... 3085
72.10 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 72, Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and baseband medium, type 10GBASE-KR ... 3086
72.10.1 Introduction ... 3086
72.10.2 Identification ... 3086
72.10.3 Major capabilities/options ... 3087
72.10.4 PICS proforma tables for Clause 72, Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and baseband medium, type 10GBASE-KR ... 3087

73. Auto-Negotiation for backplane and copper cable assembly ... 3094

73.1 Auto-Negotiation introduction ... 3094
73.2 Relationship to the ISO/IEC Open Systems Interconnection (OSI) reference model ... 3095
73.3 Functional specifications ... 3095
73.4 Transmit function requirements ... 3096
73.5 DME transmission ... 3096
73.5.1 DME electrical specifications ... 3096
73.5.2 DME page encoding ... 3096
73.5.3 DME page timing ... 3097
73.6 Link codeword encoding ... 3098
73.6.1 Selector Field ... 3099
73.6.2 Echoed Nonce Field ... 3099
73.6.3 Transmitted Nonce Field ... 3099
73.6.4 Technology Ability Field ... 3100
73.6.5 FEC capability ... 3100
73.6.6 Pause Ability ... 3101
73.6.7 Remote Fault ... 3102
73.6.8 Acknowledge ... 3102
73.6.9 Next Page ... 3102
73.6.10 Transmit Switch function ... 3102
73.7 Receive function requirements ... 3103
73.7.1 DME page reception ... 3103
73.7.2 Receive Switch function ... 3103
73.7.3 Link codeword matching ... 3103
73.7.4 Arbitration function requirements ... 3103
73.7.5 Renegotiation function ... 3104
73.7.6 Priority Resolution function ... 3104
73.7.7 Next Page function ... 3105
73.8 Management register requirements ... 3107
73.9 Technology-Dependent interface ... 3108
73.9.1 AN_LINK.indication ... 3108
73.10 State diagrams and variable definitions ... 3109
73.10.1 State diagram variables ... 3109
73.10.2 State diagram timers ... 3116
73.10.3 State diagram counters ... 3118
73.10.4 State diagrams ... 3119
73.11 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 73, Auto-Negotiation for backplane and copper cable assembly ... 3122
73.11.1 Introduction ... 3122
73.11.2 Identification ... 3122

73.11.3 Major capabilities/options ... 3123
73.11.4 PICS proforma tables for Auto-Negotiation for backplane and copper cable assembly 3123

74. Forward error correction (FEC) sublayer for BASE-R PHYs ... 3130

74.1 Overview ... 3130
74.2 Objectives ... 3130
74.3 Relationship to other sublayers ... 3130
74.4 Inter-sublayer interfaces ... 3131
74.4.1 Functional Block Diagram for 10GBASE-R PHYs ... 3132
74.4.2 Functional block diagram for 25GBASE-R PHYs ... 3133
74.4.3 Functional block diagram for 40GBASE-R PHYs ... 3134
74.4.4 Functional block diagram for 100GBASE-R PHYs ... 3134
74.5 FEC service interface ... 3135
74.5.1 10GBASE-R service primitives ... 3136
74.5.2 25GBASE-R service primitives ... 3139
74.5.3 40GBASE-R and 100GBASE-R service primitives ... 3140
74.6 Delay constraints ... 3141
74.7 FEC principle of operation ... 3141
74.7.1 FEC code ... 3141
74.7.2 FEC block format ... 3142
74.7.3 Composition of the FEC block ... 3142
74.7.4 Functions within FEC sublayer ... 3143
74.8 FEC MDIO function mapping ... 3151
74.8.1 FEC capability ... 3151
74.8.2 FEC Enable ... 3151
74.8.3 FEC Enable Error Indication ... 3152
74.8.4 FEC Error monitoring capability ... 3152
74.9 BASE-R PHY test-pattern mode ... 3153
74.10 Detailed functions and state diagrams ... 3153
74.10.1 State diagram conventions ... 3153
74.10.2 State variables ... 3153
74.10.3 State diagrams ... 3154
74.11 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 74, forward error correction (FEC) sublayer for BASE-R PHYs ... 3156
74.11.1 Introduction ... 3156
74.11.2 Identification ... 3156
74.11.3 Major capabilities/options ... 3157
74.11.4 Management ... 3158
74.11.5 FEC requirements ... 3159
74.11.6 FEC Error Monitoring ... 3160

75. Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and medium for passive optical networks, type 10GBASE–PR and 10/1GBASE–PRX ... 3161

75.1 Overview ... 3161
75.1.1 Terminology and conventions ... 3161
75.1.2 Goals and objectives ... 3161
75.1.3 Power budget classes ... 3161
75.1.4 Power budgets ... 3162
75.1.5 Positioning of PMD sublayer within the IEEE 802.3 architecture ... 3163
75.2 PMD types ... 3163
75.2.1 Mapping of PMDs to power budgets ... 3166
75.3 PMD functional specifications ... 3167

75.3.1 PMD service interface ... 3167
75.3.2 PMD block diagram ... 3169
75.3.3 PMD transmit function ... 3169
75.3.4 PMD receive function ... 3169
75.3.5 PMD signal detect function ... 3169
75.3.6 PMD transmit enable function for ONU ... 3171
75.4 PMD to MDI optical specifications for 10/10G–EPON and 10/1G–EPON OLT PMDs ... 3171
75.4.1 Transmitter optical specifications ... 3171
75.4.2 Receiver optical specifications ... 3172
75.5 PMD to MDI optical specifications for 10/10G–EPON and 10/1G–EPON ONU PMDs ... 3174
75.5.1 Transmitter optical specifications ... 3175
75.5.2 Receiver optical specifications ... 3176
75.6 Dual-rate (coexistence) mode ... 3177
75.6.1 Downstream dual-rate operation ... 3178
75.6.2 Upstream dual-rate operation ... 3178
75.7 Definitions of optical parameters and measurement methods ... 3178
75.7.1 Insertion loss ... 3178
75.7.2 Allocation for penalties in 10G–EPON PMDs ... 3178
75.7.3 Test patterns ... 3179
75.7.4 Wavelength, spectral width, and side mode suppression ratio (SMSR) measurement ... 3179
75.7.5 Optical power measurements ... 3180
75.7.6 Extinction ratio measurements ... 3180
75.7.7 Optical modulation amplitude (OMA) test procedure ... 3180
75.7.8 Relative intensity noise optical modulation amplitude (RINxOMA) measuring procedure ... 3180
75.7.9 Transmit optical waveform (transmit eye) ... 3180
75.7.10 Transmitter and dispersion penalty (TDP) ... 3181
75.7.11 Receive sensitivity ... 3181
75.7.12 Stressed receiver conformance test ... 3181
75.7.13 Jitter measurements ... 3182
75.7.14 Laser on/off timing measurement ... 3182
75.7.15 Receiver settling timing measurement ... 3182
75.8 Environmental, safety, and labeling ... 3184
75.8.1 General safety ... 3184
75.8.2 Laser safety ... 3184
75.8.3 Installation ... 3184
75.8.4 Environment ... 3184
75.8.5 PMD labeling ... 3184
75.9 Characteristics of the fiber optic cabling ... 3185
75.9.1 Fiber optic cabling model ... 3185
75.9.2 Optical fiber and cable ... 3185
75.9.3 Optical fiber connection ... 3186
75.9.4 Medium Dependent Interface (MDI) ... 3186
75.10 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 75, Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and medium for passive optical networks, type 10GBASE–PR and 10/1GBASE–PRX ... 3187
75.10.1 Introduction ... 3187
75.10.2 Identification ... 3187
75.10.3 Major capabilities/options ... 3188
75.10.4 PICS proforma tables for Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and medium for passive optical networks, type 10GBASE–PR and 10/1GBASE–PRX ... 3189

76. Reconciliation Sublayer, Physical Coding Sublayer, and Physical Media Attachment for 10G-EPON ... 3197

76.1 Overview ... 3197
76.1.1 Conventions ... 3197
76.1.2 Delay constraints ... 3197
76.2 Reconciliation Sublayer (RS) for 10G-EPON ... 3197
76.2.1 Overview ... 3197
76.2.2 Dual-speed Media Independent Interface ... 3200
76.2.3 Summary of major concepts ... 3202
76.2.4 GMII structure ... 3202
76.2.5 XGMII structure ... 3202
76.2.6 Mapping of XGMII and GMII signals to PLS service primitives ... 3203
76.3 Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS) for 10G-EPON ... 3205
76.3.1 Overview ... 3205
76.3.2 PCS transmit function ... 3207
76.3.3 PCS receive Function ... 3224
76.4 10GBASE-PR and 10/1GBASE-PRX PMA ... 3238
76.4.1 Extensions for 10GBASE-PR-U and 10/1GBASE-PRX-U ... 3240
76.4.2 Extensions for 10GBASE-PR-D and 10/1GBASE-PRX-D ... 3240
76.5 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 76, Reconciliation Sublayer, Physical Coding Sublayer, and Physical Media Attachment for 10G-EPON ... 3241
76.5.1 Introduction ... 3241
76.5.2 Identification ... 3241
76.5.3 Major capabilities/options ... 3242
76.5.4 PICS proforma tables for Reconciliation Sublayer (RS), Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS), and Physical Media Attachment (PMA) for point-to-multipoint media, types 10GBASE–PR and 10/1GBASE–PRX ... 3243

77. Multipoint MAC Control for 10G–EPON ... 3247

77.1 Overview ... 3247
77.1.1 Goals and objectives ... 3248
77.1.2 Position of Multipoint MAC Control within the IEEE 802.3 hierarchy ... 3248
77.1.3 Functional block diagram ... 3252
77.1.4 Service interfaces ... 3253
77.1.5 State diagram conventions ... 3253
77.2 Multipoint MAC Control operation ... 3253
77.2.1 Principles of Multipoint MAC Control ... 3254
77.2.2 Multipoint transmission control, Control Parser, and Control Multiplexer ... 3256
77.3 Multipoint Control Protocol (MPCP) ... 3269
77.3.1 Principles of Multipoint Control Protocol ... 3269
77.3.2 Compatibility considerations ... 3269
77.3.3 Discovery processing ... 3270
77.3.4 Report Processing ... 3284
77.3.5 Gate Processing ... 3287
77.3.6 MPCPDU structure and encoding ... 3296
77.4 Discovery Process in dual-rate systems ... 3305
77.4.1 OLT speed-specific discovery ... 3305
77.4.2 ONU speed-specific registration ... 3306
77.5 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 77, Multipoint MAC Control ... 3309
77.5.1 Introduction ... 3309
77.5.2 Identification ... 3309
77.5.3 Major capabilities/options ... 3310
77.5.4 PICS proforma tables for Multipoint MAC Control ... 3310

78. Energy-Efficient Ethernet (EEE) 3313

78.1 Overview 3313
78.1.1 LPI Signaling 3313
78.1.2 LPI Client service interface 3314
78.1.3 Reconciliation sublayer operation 3316
78.1.4 PHY types optionally supporting EEE 3319
78.2 LPI mode timing parameters description 3321
78.3 Capabilities Negotiation 3323
78.4 Data Link Layer capabilities 3324
78.4.1 Data Link Layer capabilities timing requirements 3325
78.4.2 Control state diagrams 3325
78.4.3 State change procedure across a link 3334
78.5 Communication link access latency 3337
78.5.1 PHY extension using extender sublayers 3340
78.5.2 25 Gb/s 40 Gb/s, and 100 Gb/s PHY extension using 25GAUI, XLAUI, or CAUI-n 3341
78.6 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for EEE Data Link Layer Capabilities 3342
78.6.1 Introduction 3342
78.6.2 Identification 3342
78.6.3 Major capabilities/options 3343
78.6.4 DLL requirements 3343

79. IEEE 802.3 Organizationally Specific Link Layer Discovery Protocol (LLDP) type, length, and value (TLV) information elements 3344

79.1 Overview 3344
79.1.1 IEEE 802.3 LLDP frame format 3344
79.2 Requirements of the IEEE 802.3 Organizationally Specific TLV set 3345
79.3 IEEE 802.3 Organizationally Specific TLVs 3346
79.3.1 MAC/PHY Configuration/Status TLV 3346
79.3.2 Power Via MDI TLV 3347
79.3.3 Link Aggregation TLV (deprecated) 3357
79.3.4 Maximum Frame Size TLV 3358
79.3.5 EEE TLV 3360
79.3.6 EEE Fast Wake TLV 3361
79.3.7 Additional Ethernet Capabilities TLV 3362
79.3.8 Power via MDI Measurements TLV 3363
79.4 IEEE 802.3 Organizationally Specific TLV selection management 3366
79.4.1 IEEE 802.3 Organizationally Specific TLV selection variable/LLDP Configuration managed object class cross reference 3366
79.4.2 IEEE 802.3 Organizationally Specific TLV/LLDP Local and Remote System group managed object class cross references 3366
79.5 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for IEEE 802.3 Organizationally Specific Link Layer Discovery Protocol (LLDP) type, length, and value (TLV) information elements 3372
79.5.1 Introduction 3372
79.5.2 Identification 3372
79.5.3 Major capabilities/options 3373
79.5.4 IEEE 802.3 Organizationally Specific TLV 3373
79.5.5 MAC/PHY Configuration/Status TLV 3374
79.5.6 EEE TLV 3374
79.5.7 EEE Fast Wake TLV 3375
79.5.8 Power Via MDI TLV 3375

79.5.9 Link Aggregation TLV ... 3379
79.5.10 Maximum Frame Size TLV ... 3379
79.5.11 Additional Ethernet Capabilities TLV ... 3380
79.5.12 Power via MDI Measurements TLV ... 3380

80. Introduction to 40 Gb/s and 100 Gb/s networks ... 3381

80.1 Overview ... 3381
80.1.1 Scope ... 3381
80.1.2 Objectives ... 3381
80.1.3 Relationship of 40 Gigabit and 100 Gigabit Ethernet to the ISO OSI reference model ... 3381
80.1.4 Nomenclature ... 3382
80.1.5 Physical Layer signaling systems ... 3385
80.2 Summary of 40 Gigabit and 100 Gigabit Ethernet sublayers ... 3388
80.2.1 Reconciliation Sublayer (RS) and Media Independent Interface ... 3388
80.2.2 Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS) ... 3388
80.2.3 Forward error correction (FEC) sublayers ... 3388
80.2.4 Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) sublayer ... 3388
80.2.5 Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer ... 3389
80.2.6 Auto-Negotiation ... 3389
80.2.7 Management interface (MDIO/MDC) ... 3389
80.2.8 Management ... 3389
80.3 Service interface specification method and notation ... 3389
80.3.1 Inter-sublayer service interface ... 3389
80.3.2 Instances of the Inter-sublayer service interface ... 3390
80.3.3 Semantics of inter-sublayer service interface primitives ... 3396
80.4 Delay constraints ... 3399
80.5 Skew constraints ... 3401
80.6 State diagrams ... 3406
80.7 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma ... 3407

81. Reconciliation Sublayer (RS) and Media Independent Interface for 40 Gb/s and 100 Gb/s operation (XLGMII and CGMII) ... 3408

81.1 Overview ... 3408
81.1.1 Summary of major concepts ... 3409
81.1.2 Application ... 3409
81.1.3 Rate of operation ... 3409
81.1.4 Delay constraints ... 3409
81.1.5 Allocation of functions ... 3409
81.1.6 XLGMII/CGMII structure ... 3410
81.1.7 Mapping of XLGMII/CGMII signals to PLS service primitives ... 3410
81.2 XLGMII/CGMII data stream ... 3413
81.2.1 Inter-frame <inter-frame> ... 3414
81.2.2 Preamble <preamble> and start of frame delimiter <sfd> ... 3414
81.2.3 Data <data> ... 3415
81.2.4 End of frame delimiter <efd> ... 3415
81.2.5 Definition of Start of Packet and End of Packet Delimiters ... 3415
81.3 XLGMII/CGMII functional specifications ... 3415
81.3.1 Transmit ... 3415
81.3.2 Receive ... 3419
81.3.3 Error and fault handling ... 3423
81.3.4 Link fault signaling ... 3424

81.4 LPI assertion and detection ... 3426
81.4.1 LPI messages ... 3427
81.4.2 Transmit LPI state diagram ... 3428
81.4.3 Considerations for transmit system behavior ... 3428
81.4.4 Considerations for receive system behavior ... 3428
81.5 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 81, Reconciliation Sublayer (RS) and Media Independent Interface for 40 Gb/s and 100 Gb/s operation ... 3430
81.5.1 Introduction ... 3430
81.5.2 Identification ... 3430
81.5.3 PICS proforma tables for Reconciliation Sublayer and Media Independent Interface for 40 Gb/s and 100 Gb/s operation ... 3431

82. Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS) for 64B/66B, type 40GBASE-R and 100GBASE-R ... 3436

82.1 Overview ... 3436
82.1.1 Scope ... 3436
82.1.2 Relationship of 40GBASE-R and 100GBASE-R to other standards ... 3436
82.1.3 Summary of 40GBASE-R and 100GBASE-R sublayers ... 3437
82.1.4 Inter-sublayer interfaces ... 3438
82.1.5 Functional block diagram ... 3439
82.2 Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS) ... 3440
82.2.1 Functions within the PCS ... 3440
82.2.2 Use of blocks ... 3441
82.2.3 64B/66B transmission code ... 3441
82.2.4 Transmit process ... 3447
82.2.5 Scrambler ... 3447
82.2.6 Block distribution ... 3448
82.2.7 Alignment marker insertion ... 3448
82.2.8 BIP calculations ... 3451
82.2.9 Rapid alignment marker insertion ... 3451
82.2.10 PMA or FEC Interface ... 3453
82.2.11 Test-pattern generators ... 3454
82.2.12 Block synchronization ... 3454
82.2.13 PCS lane deskew ... 3454
82.2.14 PCS lane reorder ... 3455
82.2.15 Alignment marker removal ... 3455
82.2.16 Descrambler ... 3455
82.2.17 Receive process ... 3455
82.2.18 Test-pattern checker ... 3456
82.2.19 Detailed functions and state diagrams ... 3456
82.3 PCS Management ... 3473
82.3.1 PCS MDIO function mapping ... 3473
82.4 Loopback ... 3474
82.5 Delay constraints ... 3474
82.6 Auto-Negotiation ... 3474
82.7 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 82, Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS) for 64B/66B, type 40GBASE-R and 100GBASE-R ... 3475
82.7.1 Introduction ... 3475
82.7.2 Identification ... 3475
82.7.3 Major capabilities/options ... 3476
82.7.4 PICS proforma tables for PCS, type 40GBASE-R and 100GBASE-R ... 3477

83. Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) sublayer, type 40GBASE-R and 100GBASE-R ... 3482

83.1 Overview ... 3482
83.1.1 Scope ... 3482
83.1.2 Position of the PMA in the 40GBASE-R or 100GBASE-R sublayers ... 3482
83.1.3 Summary of functions ... 3482
83.1.4 PMA sublayer positioning ... 3482
83.2 PMA interfaces ... 3485
83.3 PMA service interface ... 3485
83.4 Service interface below PMA ... 3488
83.5 Functions within the PMA ... 3489
83.5.1 Per input-lane clock and data recovery ... 3489
83.5.2 Bit-level multiplexing ... 3489
83.5.3 Skew and Skew Variation ... 3491
83.5.4 Delay constraints ... 3492
83.5.5 Clocking architecture ... 3492
83.5.6 Signal drivers ... 3493
83.5.7 Link status ... 3493
83.5.8 PMA local loopback mode ... 3493
83.5.9 PMA remote loopback mode (optional) ... 3493
83.5.10 PMA test patterns (optional) ... 3494
83.5.11 Energy Efficient Ethernet ... 3496
83.6 PMA MDIO function mapping ... 3499
83.7 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 83, Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) sublayer, type 40GBASE-R and 100GBASE-R ... 3503
83.7.1 Introduction ... 3503
83.7.2 Identification ... 3503
83.7.3 Major capabilities/options ... 3504
83.7.4 Skew generation and tolerance ... 3506
83.7.5 Test patterns ... 3506
83.7.6 Loopback modes ... 3507
83.7.7 EEE deep sleep with XLAUI/CAUI ... 3507

84. Physical Medium Dependent sublayer and baseband medium, type 40GBASE-KR4 ... 3508

84.1 Overview ... 3508
84.2 Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) service interface ... 3508
84.3 PCS requirements for Auto-Negotiation (AN) service interface ... 3510
84.4 Delay constraints ... 3510
84.5 Skew constraints ... 3510
84.6 PMD MDIO function mapping ... 3511
84.7 PMD functional specifications ... 3512
84.7.1 Link block diagram ... 3512
84.7.2 PMD transmit function ... 3512
84.7.3 PMD receive function ... 3512
84.7.4 Global PMD signal detect function ... 3513
84.7.5 PMD lane-by-lane signal detect function ... 3513
84.7.6 Global PMD transmit disable function ... 3513
84.7.7 PMD lane-by-lane transmit disable function ... 3514
84.7.8 Loopback mode ... 3514
84.7.9 PMD_fault function ... 3514
84.7.10 PMD transmit fault function ... 3514
84.7.11 PMD receive fault function ... 3514
84.7.12 PMD control function ... 3515
84.8 40GBASE-KR4 electrical characteristics ... 3515
84.8.1 Transmitter characteristics ... 3515

84.8.2 Receiver characteristics ... 3515
84.9 Interconnect characteristics ... 3515
84.10 Environmental specifications ... 3515
84.10.1 General safety ... 3515
84.10.2 Network safety ... 3516
84.10.3 Installation and maintenance guidelines ... 3516
84.10.4 Electromagnetic compatibility ... 3516
84.10.5 Temperature and humidity ... 3516
84.11 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 84, Physical Medium Dependent sublayer and baseband medium, type 40GBASE-KR4 ... 3517
84.11.1 Introduction ... 3517
84.11.2 Identification ... 3517
84.11.3 Major capabilities/options ... 3518
84.11.4 PICS proforma tables for Clause 84, Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and baseband medium, type 40GBASE-KR4 ... 3519

85. Physical Medium Dependent sublayer and baseband medium, type 40GBASE-CR4 and 100GBASE-CR10 ... 3522

85.1 Overview ... 3522
85.2 Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) service interface ... 3523
85.3 PCS requirements for Auto-Negotiation (AN) service interface ... 3524
85.4 Delay constraints ... 3524
85.5 Skew constraints ... 3525
85.6 PMD MDIO function mapping ... 3525
85.7 PMD functional specifications ... 3527
85.7.1 Link block diagram ... 3527
85.7.2 PMD Transmit function ... 3529
85.7.3 PMD Receive function ... 3529
85.7.4 Global PMD signal detect function ... 3529
85.7.5 PMD lane-by-lane signal detect function ... 3530
85.7.6 Global PMD transmit disable function ... 3530
85.7.7 PMD lane-by-lane transmit disable function ... 3530
85.7.8 Loopback mode ... 3530
85.7.9 PMD_fault function ... 3531
85.7.10 PMD transmit fault function ... 3531
85.7.11 PMD receive fault function ... 3531
85.7.12 PMD control function ... 3531
85.8 MDI Electrical specifications for 40GBASE-CR4 and 100GBASE-CR10 ... 3531
85.8.1 Signal levels ... 3531
85.8.2 Signal paths ... 3531
85.8.3 Transmitter characteristics ... 3532
85.8.4 Receiver characteristics at TP3 summary ... 3542
85.9 Channel characteristics ... 3545
85.10 Cable assembly characteristics ... 3545
85.10.1 Characteristic impedance and reference impedance ... 3546
85.10.2 Cable assembly insertion loss ... 3546
85.10.3 Cable assembly insertion loss deviation (ILD) ... 3548
85.10.4 Cable assembly return loss ... 3549
85.10.5 Cable assembly multiple disturber near-end crosstalk (MDNEXT) loss ... 3550
85.10.6 Cable assembly multiple disturber far-end crosstalk (MDFEXT) loss ... 3550
85.10.7 Cable assembly integrated crosstalk noise (ICN) ... 3551
85.10.8 Cable assembly test fixture ... 3553
85.10.9 Mated test fixtures ... 3553

85.10.10 Shielding ... 3556
85.10.11 Crossover function ... 3556
85.11 MDI specification ... 3557
85.11.1 40GBASE-CR4 MDI connectors ... 3557
85.11.2 100GBASE-CR10 MDI connectors ... 3560
85.11.3 Electronic keying ... 3562
85.12 Environmental specifications ... 3562
85.13 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 85, Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and baseband medium, type 40GBASE-CR4 and 100GBASE-CR10 ... 3563
85.13.1 Introduction ... 3563
85.13.2 Identification ... 3563
85.13.3 Major capabilities/options ... 3564
85.13.4 PICS proforma tables for Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and baseband medium, type 40GBASE-CR4 and 100GBASE-CR10 ... 3565

86. Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and medium, type 40GBASE-SR4 and 100GBASE-SR10 ... 3570

86.1 Overview ... 3570
86.2 Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) service interface ... 3572
86.3 Delay and Skew ... 3573
86.3.1 Delay constraints ... 3573
86.3.2 Skew and Skew Variation constraints ... 3573
86.4 PMD MDIO function mapping ... 3573
86.5 PMD functional specifications ... 3574
86.5.1 PMD block diagram ... 3574
86.5.2 PMD transmit function ... 3575
86.5.3 PMD receive function ... 3575
86.5.4 PMD global signal detect function ... 3575
86.5.5 PMD lane-by-lane signal detect function ... 3576
86.5.6 PMD reset function ... 3576
86.5.7 PMD global transmit disable function (optional) ... 3576
86.5.8 PMD lane-by-lane transmit disable function (optional) ... 3577
86.5.9 PMD fault function (optional) ... 3577
86.5.10 PMD transmit fault function (optional) ... 3577
86.5.11 PMD receive fault function (optional) ... 3577
86.6 Lane assignments ... 3577
86.7 PMD to MDI specifications for 40GBASE-SR4 or 100GBASE-SR10 ... 3577
86.7.1 Transmitter optical specifications ... 3578
86.7.2 Characteristics of signal within, and at the receiving end of, a compliant optical channel ... 3579
86.7.3 40GBASE-SR4 or 100GBASE-SR10 receiver optical specifications ... 3580
86.7.4 40GBASE-SR4 or 100GBASE-SR10 illustrative link power budget ... 3581
86.8 Definitions of optical and dual-use parameters and measurement methods ... 3581
86.8.1 Test points and compliance boards ... 3581
86.8.2 Test patterns and related subclauses ... 3581
86.8.3 Parameters applicable to both electrical and optical signals ... 3584
86.8.4 Optical parameter definitions ... 3586
86.9 Safety, installation, environment, and labeling ... 3589
86.9.1 General safety ... 3589
86.9.2 Laser safety ... 3589
86.9.3 Installation ... 3589
86.9.4 Environment ... 3589

86.9.5 PMD labeling ... 3589
86.10 Optical channel ... 3589
86.10.1 Fiber optic cabling model ... 3590
86.10.2 Characteristics of the fiber optic cabling (channel) ... 3590
86.10.3 Medium Dependent Interface (MDI) ... 3591
86.11 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 86, Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and medium, type 40GBASE-SR4 and 100GBASE-SR10 ... 3595
86.11.1 Introduction ... 3595
86.11.2 Identification ... 3595
86.11.3 Major capabilities/options ... 3596
86.11.4 PICS proforma tables for Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and medium, types 40GBASE-SR4 and 100GBASE-SR10 ... 3597

87. Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and medium, type 40GBASE-LR4 and 40GBASE-ER4 ... 3601

87.1 Overview ... 3601
87.2 Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) service interface ... 3601
87.3 Delay and Skew ... 3603
87.3.1 Delay constraints ... 3603
87.3.2 Skew constraints ... 3603
87.4 PMD MDIO function mapping ... 3603
87.5 PMD functional specifications ... 3603
87.5.1 PMD block diagram ... 3603
87.5.2 PMD transmit function ... 3604
87.5.3 PMD receive function ... 3605
87.5.4 PMD global signal detect function ... 3605
87.5.5 PMD lane-by-lane signal detect function ... 3606
87.5.6 PMD reset function ... 3606
87.5.7 PMD global transmit disable function (optional) ... 3606
87.5.8 PMD lane-by-lane transmit disable function ... 3606
87.5.9 PMD fault function (optional) ... 3607
87.5.10 PMD transmit fault function (optional) ... 3607
87.5.11 PMD receive fault function (optional) ... 3607
87.6 Wavelength-division-multiplexed lane assignments ... 3607
87.7 PMD to MDI optical specifications for 40GBASE-LR4 and 40GBASE-ER4 ... 3607
87.7.1 40GBASE-LR4 and 40GBASE-ER4 transmitter optical specifications ... 3608
87.7.2 40GBASE-LR4 and 40GBASE-ER4 receive optical specifications ... 3609
87.7.3 40GBASE-LR4 and 40GBASE-ER4 illustrative link power budgets ... 3610
87.8 Definition of optical parameters and measurement methods ... 3610
87.8.1 Test patterns for optical parameters ... 3611
87.8.2 Skew and Skew Variation ... 3612
87.8.3 Wavelength and side mode suppression ratio (SMSR) ... 3612
87.8.4 Average optical power ... 3612
87.8.5 Optical Modulation Amplitude (OMA) ... 3612
87.8.6 Transmitter and dispersion penalty ... 3612
87.8.7 Extinction ratio ... 3614
87.8.8 Relative Intensity Noise (RIN20OMA) ... 3614
87.8.9 Transmitter optical waveform (transmit eye) ... 3614
87.8.10 Receiver sensitivity ... 3614
87.8.11 Stressed receiver sensitivity ... 3614
87.8.12 Receiver 3 dB electrical upper cutoff frequency ... 3620
87.9 Safety, installation, environment, and labeling ... 3620

87.9.1 General safety ... 3620
87.9.2 Laser safety ... 3620
87.9.3 Installation ... 3621
87.9.4 Environment ... 3621
87.9.5 PMD labeling requirements ... 3621
87.10 Fiber optic cabling model ... 3621
87.11 Characteristics of the fiber optic cabling (channel) ... 3622
87.11.1 Optical fiber cable ... 3622
87.11.2 Optical fiber connection ... 3623
87.11.3 Medium Dependent Interface (MDI) requirements ... 3623
87.12 Requirements for interoperation between 40GBASE-LR4 and 40GBASE-ER4 ... 3623
87.13 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 87, Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and medium, type 40GBASE-LR4 and 40GBASE-ER4 ... 3624
87.13.1 Introduction ... 3624
87.13.2 Identification ... 3624
87.13.3 Major capabilities/options ... 3625
87.13.4 PICS proforma tables for Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and medium, type 40GBASE-LR4 and 40GBASE-ER4 ... 3626

88. Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and medium, type 100GBASE-LR4 and 100GBASE-ER4 ... 3629

88.1 Overview ... 3629
88.2 Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) service interface ... 3629
88.3 Delay and Skew ... 3631
88.3.1 Delay constraints ... 3631
88.3.2 Skew constraints ... 3631
88.4 PMD MDIO function mapping ... 3631
88.5 PMD functional specifications ... 3631
88.5.1 PMD block diagram ... 3631
88.5.2 PMD transmit function ... 3633
88.5.3 PMD receive function ... 3633
88.5.4 PMD global signal detect function ... 3633
88.5.5 PMD lane-by-lane signal detect function ... 3634
88.5.6 PMD reset function ... 3634
88.5.7 PMD global transmit disable function (optional) ... 3634
88.5.8 PMD lane-by-lane transmit disable function ... 3634
88.5.9 PMD fault function (optional) ... 3635
88.5.10 PMD transmit fault function (optional) ... 3635
88.5.11 PMD receive fault function (optional) ... 3635
88.6 Wavelength-division-multiplexed lane assignments ... 3635
88.7 PMD to MDI optical specifications for 100GBASE-LR4 and 100GBASE-ER4 ... 3635
88.7.1 100GBASE-LR4 and 100GBASE-ER4 transmitter optical specifications ... 3636
88.7.2 100GBASE-LR4 and 100GBASE-ER4 receive optical specifications ... 3638
88.7.3 100GBASE-LR4 and 100GBASE-ER4 illustrative link power budgets ... 3639
88.8 Definition of optical parameters and measurement methods ... 3639
88.8.1 Test patterns for optical parameters ... 3639
88.8.2 Wavelength and side mode suppression ratio (SMSR) ... 3639
88.8.3 Average optical power ... 3639
88.8.4 Optical Modulation Amplitude (OMA) ... 3640
88.8.5 Transmitter and dispersion penalty (TDP) ... 3640
88.8.6 Extinction ratio ... 3642
88.8.7 Relative Intensity Noise (RIN20OMA) ... 3642

88.8.8 Transmitter optical waveform (transmit eye) ... 3642
88.8.9 Receiver sensitivity ... 3643
88.8.10 Stressed receiver sensitivity ... 3643
88.8.11 Receiver 3 dB electrical upper cutoff frequency ... 3643
88.9 Safety, installation, environment, and labeling ... 3643
88.9.1 General safety ... 3643
88.9.2 Laser safety ... 3643
88.9.3 Installation ... 3644
88.9.4 Environment ... 3644
88.9.5 Electromagnetic emission ... 3644
88.9.6 Temperature, humidity, and handling ... 3644
88.9.7 PMD labeling requirements ... 3644
88.10 Fiber optic cabling model ... 3645
88.11 Characteristics of the fiber optic cabling (channel) ... 3645
88.11.1 Optical fiber cable ... 3646
88.11.2 Optical fiber connection ... 3646
88.11.3 Medium Dependent Interface (MDI) requirements ... 3646
88.12 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 88, Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and medium, type 100GBASE-LR4 and 100GBASE-ER4 ... 3647
88.12.1 Introduction ... 3647
88.12.2 Identification ... 3647
88.12.3 Major capabilities/options ... 3648
88.12.4 PICS proforma tables for Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and medium, types 100GBASE-LR4 and 100GBASE-ER4 ... 3649

89. Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and medium, type 40GBASE-FR ... 3652

89.1 Overview ... 3652
89.2 Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) service interface ... 3653
89.3 Delay and skew ... 3654
89.3.1 Delay constraints ... 3654
89.3.2 Skew constraints ... 3654
89.4 PMD MDIO function mapping ... 3654
89.5 PMD functional specifications ... 3655
89.5.1 PMD block diagram ... 3655
89.5.2 PMD transmit function ... 3655
89.5.3 PMD receive function ... 3655
89.5.4 PMD global signal detect function ... 3656
89.5.5 PMD reset function ... 3657
89.5.6 PMD global transmit disable function (optional) ... 3657
89.5.7 PMD fault function (optional) ... 3657
89.5.8 PMD transmit fault function (optional) ... 3657
89.5.9 PMD receive fault function (optional) ... 3657
89.6 PMD to MDI optical specifications for 40GBASE-FR ... 3657
89.6.1 40GBASE-FR transmitter optical specifications ... 3658
89.6.2 40GBASE-FR receive optical specifications ... 3658
89.6.3 40GBASE-FR illustrative link power budget ... 3659
89.6.4 Comparison of power budget methodology ... 3659
89.7 Definition of optical parameters and measurement methods ... 3660
89.7.1 Test patterns for optical parameters ... 3660
89.7.2 Skew and Skew Variation ... 3661
89.7.3 Wavelength and side mode suppression ratio (SMSR) ... 3661
89.7.4 Average optical power ... 3661

89.7.5 Dispersion penalty ... 3661
89.7.6 Extinction ratio ... 3662
89.7.7 Relative Intensity Noise (RIN20OMA) ... 3663
89.7.8 Transmitter optical waveform (transmit eye) ... 3663
89.7.9 Receiver sensitivity ... 3663
89.7.10 Receiver jitter tolerance ... 3663
89.7.11 Receiver 3 dB electrical upper cutoff frequency ... 3663
89.8 Safety, installation, environment, and labeling ... 3664
89.8.1 General safety ... 3664
89.8.2 Laser safety ... 3664
89.8.3 Installation ... 3664
89.8.4 Environment ... 3664
89.8.5 PMD labeling requirements ... 3665
89.9 Fiber optic cabling model ... 3665
89.10 Characteristics of the fiber optic cabling (channel) ... 3665
89.10.1 Optical fiber cable ... 3665
89.10.2 Optical fiber connection ... 3666
89.10.3 Medium Dependent Interface (MDI) requirements ... 3667
89.11 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 89, Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and medium, type 40GBASE-FR ... 3668
89.11.1 Introduction ... 3668
89.11.2 Identification ... 3668
89.11.3 Major capabilities/options ... 3669
89.11.4 PICS proforma tables for Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and medium, type 40GBASE-FR ... 3669

90. Ethernet support for time synchronization protocols ... 3672

90.1 Introduction ... 3672
90.2 Overview ... 3672
90.3 Relationship with other IEEE standards ... 3672
90.4 Time Synchronization Service Interface (TSSI) ... 3672
90.4.1 Introduction ... 3672
90.4.2 TSSI ... 3674
90.4.3 Detailed service specification ... 3674
90.5 generic Reconciliation Sublayer (gRS) ... 3675
90.5.1 TS_SFD_Detect_TX function ... 3675
90.5.2 TS_SFD_Detect_RX function ... 3675
90.6 Overview of management features ... 3676
90.7 Data delay measurement ... 3677
90.8 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 90, Ethernet support for time synchronization protocols ... 3679
90.8.1 Introduction ... 3679
90.8.2 Identification ... 3679
90.8.3 TSSI indication ... 3680
90.8.4 Data delay reporting ... 3680

91. Reed-Solomon forward error correction (RS-FEC) sublayer for 100GBASE-R PHYs ... 3681

91.1 Overview ... 3681
91.1.1 Scope ... 3681
91.1.2 Position of RS-FEC in the 100GBASE-R sublayers ... 3681
91.2 FEC service interface ... 3681
91.3 PMA compatibility ... 3683

91.4 Delay constraints ... 3683
91.5 Functions within the RS-FEC sublayer ... 3683
91.5.1 Functional block diagram ... 3683
91.5.2 Transmit function ... 3683
91.5.3 Receive function ... 3691
91.5.4 Detailed functions and state diagrams ... 3697
91.6 RS-FEC MDIO function mapping ... 3706
91.6.1 FEC_bypass_correction_enable ... 3708
91.6.2 FEC_bypass_indication_enable ... 3708
91.6.3 four_lane_pmd ... 3708
91.6.4 FEC_degraded_SER_enable ... 3708
91.6.5 FEC_degraded_SER_activate_threshold ... 3709
91.6.6 FEC_degraded_SER_deactivate_threshold ... 3709
91.6.7 FEC_degraded_SER_interval ... 3709
91.6.8 FEC_bypass_correction_ability ... 3709
91.6.9 FEC_bypass_indication_ability ... 3709
91.6.10 hi_ser ... 3709
91.6.11 FEC_degraded_SER_ability ... 3709
91.6.12 FEC_degraded_SER ... 3709
91.6.13 FEC_optional_states ... 3709
91.6.14 amps_lock<*x*> ... 3710
91.6.15 fec_align_status ... 3710
91.6.16 FEC_corrected_cw_counter ... 3710
91.6.17 FEC_uncorrected_cw_counter ... 3710
91.6.18 FEC_lane_mapping<*x*> ... 3710
91.6.19 FEC_symbol_error_counter_*i* ... *3710*
91.6.20 align_status ... 3710
91.6.21 BIP_error_counter_*i* ... *3710*
91.6.22 lane_mapping<*x*> ... 3711
91.6.23 block_lock<*x*> ... 3711
91.6.24 am_lock<*x*> ... 3711
91.7 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 91, Reed-Solomon forward error correction (RS-FEC) sublayer for 100GBASE-R PHYs ... 3712
91.7.1 Introduction ... 3712
91.7.2 Identification ... 3712
91.7.3 Major capabilities/options ... 3713
91.7.4 PICS proforma tables for Reed-Solomon forward error correction (RS-FEC) sublayer for 100GBASE-R PHYs ... 3713

92. Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and baseband medium, type 100GBASE-CR4 ... 3718

92.1 Overview ... 3718
92.2 Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) service interface ... 3719
92.3 PCS requirements for Auto-Negotiation (AN) service interface ... 3720
92.4 Delay constraints ... 3720
92.5 Skew constraints ... 3720
92.6 PMD MDIO function mapping ... 3721
92.7 PMD functional specifications ... 3722
92.7.1 Link block diagram ... 3722
92.7.2 PMD Transmit function ... 3724
92.7.3 PMD Receive function ... 3724
92.7.4 Global PMD signal detect function ... 3724
92.7.5 PMD lane-by-lane signal detect function ... 3724
92.7.6 Global PMD transmit disable function ... 3725

92.7.7 PMD lane-by-lane transmit disable function ... 3725
92.7.8 Loopback mode ... 3725
92.7.9 PMD fault function ... 3725
92.7.10 PMD transmit fault function ... 3725
92.7.11 PMD receive fault function ... 3726
92.7.12 PMD control function ... 3726
92.8 100GBASE-CR4 electrical characteristics ... 3727
92.8.1 Signal levels ... 3727
92.8.2 Signal paths ... 3727
92.8.3 Transmitter characteristics ... 3727
92.8.4 Receiver characteristics ... 3736
92.9 Channel characteristics ... 3740
92.10 Cable assembly characteristics ... 3741
92.10.1 Characteristic impedance and reference impedance ... 3741
92.10.2 Cable assembly insertion loss ... 3741
92.10.3 Cable assembly differential return loss ... 3743
92.10.4 Differential to common-mode return loss ... 3743
92.10.5 Differential to common-mode conversion loss ... 3745
92.10.6 Common-mode to common-mode return loss ... 3745
92.10.7 Cable assembly Channel Operating Margin ... 3745
92.11 Test fixtures ... 3747
92.11.1 TP2 or TP3 test fixture ... 3747
92.11.2 Cable assembly test fixture ... 3749
92.11.3 Mated test fixtures ... 3749
92.12 MDI specification ... 3755
92.12.1 100GBASE-CR4 MDI connectors ... 3756
92.13 Environmental specifications ... 3758
92.14 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 92, Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and baseband medium, type 100GBASE-CR4 ... 3759
92.14.1 Introduction ... 3759
92.14.2 Identification ... 3759
92.14.3 Major capabilities/options ... 3760
92.14.4 PICS proforma tables for Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and baseband medium, type 100GBASE-CR4 ... 3761

93. Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and baseband medium, type 100GBASE-KR4 ... 3767

93.1 Overview ... 3767
93.2 Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) service interface ... 3768
93.3 PCS requirements for Auto-Negotiation (AN) service interface ... 3769
93.4 Delay constraints ... 3769
93.5 Skew constraints ... 3769
93.6 PMD MDIO function mapping ... 3770
93.7 PMD functional specifications ... 3771
93.7.1 Link block diagram ... 3771
93.7.2 PMD Transmit function ... 3771
93.7.3 PMD Receive function ... 3772
93.7.4 Global PMD signal detect function ... 3772
93.7.5 PMD lane-by-lane signal detect function ... 3772
93.7.6 Global PMD transmit disable function ... 3773
93.7.7 PMD lane-by-lane transmit disable function ... 3773
93.7.8 Loopback mode ... 3773
93.7.9 PMD fault function ... 3774
93.7.10 PMD transmit fault function ... 3774

93.7.11 PMD receive fault function ... 3774
93.7.12 PMD control function ... 3774
93.8 100GBASE-KR4 electrical characteristics ... 3775
93.8.1 Transmitter characteristics ... 3775
93.8.2 Receiver characteristics ... 3781
93.9 Channel characteristics ... 3785
93.9.1 Channel Operating Margin ... 3785
93.9.2 Insertion loss ... 3785
93.9.3 Return loss ... 3787
93.9.4 AC-coupling ... 3787
93.10 Environmental specifications ... 3787
93.10.1 General safety ... 3787
93.10.2 Network safety ... 3788
93.10.3 Installation and maintenance guidelines ... 3788
93.10.4 Electromagnetic compatibility ... 3788
93.10.5 Temperature and humidity ... 3788
93.11 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 93, Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and baseband medium, type 100GBASE-KR4 ... 3789
93.11.1 Introduction ... 3789
93.11.2 Identification ... 3789
93.11.3 Major capabilities/options ... 3790
93.11.4 PICS proforma tables for Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and baseband medium, type 100GBASE-KR4 ... 3791

94. Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) sublayer, Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer, and baseband medium, type 100GBASE-KP4 ... 3796

94.1 Overview ... 3796
94.2 Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) Sublayer ... 3797
94.2.1 PMA Service Interface ... 3797
94.2.2 PMA Transmit Functional Specifications ... 3801
94.2.3 PMA Receive Functional Specifications ... 3805
94.2.4 Skew constraints ... 3806
94.2.5 Delay constraints ... 3806
94.2.6 Link status ... 3806
94.2.7 PMA local loopback mode ... 3806
94.2.8 PMA remote loopback mode (optional) ... 3807
94.2.9 PMA test patterns ... 3807
94.2.10 PMA MDIO function mapping ... 3808
94.3 Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) Sublayer ... 3809
94.3.1 Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) service interface ... 3809
94.3.2 PCS requirements for Auto-Negotiation (AN) service interface ... 3811
94.3.3 Delay constraints ... 3811
94.3.4 Skew constraints ... 3811
94.3.5 PMD MDIO function mapping ... 3812
94.3.6 PMD functional specifications ... 3813
94.3.7 PMD fault function ... 3815
94.3.8 PMD transmit fault function ... 3815
94.3.9 PMD receive fault function ... 3816
94.3.10 PMD control function ... 3816
94.3.11 PMD LPI function ... 3824
94.3.12 PMD Transmitter electrical characteristics ... 3826
94.3.13 PMD Receiver electrical characteristics ... 3836
94.4 Channel characteristics ... 3840

94.4.1 Channel Operating Margin 3840
94.4.2 Channel insertion loss 3840
94.4.3 Channel return loss 3842
94.4.4 Channel AC-coupling 3843
94.5 Environmental specifications 3843
94.5.1 General safety 3843
94.5.2 Network safety 3843
94.5.3 Installation and maintenance guidelines 3844
94.5.4 Electromagnetic compatibility 3844
94.5.5 Temperature and humidity 3844
94.6 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 94, Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) sublayer, Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer, and baseband medium, type 100GBASE-KP4 3845
94.6.1 Introduction 3845
94.6.2 Identification 3845
94.6.3 Major capabilities/options 3846
94.6.4 PICS proforma tables for Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) sublayer, Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer, and baseband medium, type 100GBASE-KP4 3846

95. Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and medium, type 100GBASE-SR4 3854

95.1 Overview 3854
95.1.1 Bit error ratio 3855
95.2 Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) service interface 3855
95.3 Delay and Skew 3856
95.3.1 Delay constraints 3856
95.3.2 Skew constraints 3856
95.4 PMD MDIO function mapping 3857
95.5 PMD functional specifications 3857
95.5.1 PMD block diagram 3858
95.5.2 PMD transmit function 3858
95.5.3 PMD receive function 3858
95.5.4 PMD global signal detect function 3859
95.5.5 PMD lane-by-lane signal detect function 3859
95.5.6 PMD reset function 3859
95.5.7 PMD global transmit disable function (optional) 3860
95.5.8 PMD lane-by-lane transmit disable function (optional) 3860
95.5.9 PMD fault function (optional) 3860
95.5.10 PMD transmit fault function (optional) 3860
95.5.11 PMD receive fault function (optional) 3860
95.6 Lane assignments 3860
95.7 PMD to MDI optical specifications for 100GBASE-SR4 3861
95.7.1 100GBASE-SR4 transmitter optical specifications 3861
95.7.2 100GBASE-SR4 receive optical specifications 3862
95.7.3 100GBASE-SR4 illustrative link power budget 3863
95.8 Definition of optical parameters and measurement methods 3863
95.8.1 Test patterns for optical parameters 3863
95.8.2 Center wavelength and spectral width 3864
95.8.3 Average optical power 3864
95.8.4 Optical Modulation Amplitude (OMA) 3865
95.8.5 Transmitter and dispersion eye closure (TDEC) 3865
95.8.6 Extinction ratio 3868
95.8.7 Transmitter optical waveform (transmit eye) 3868
95.8.8 Stressed receiver sensitivity 3868

95.9 Safety, installation, environment, and labeling ... 3872
95.9.1 General safety ... 3872
95.9.2 Laser safety ... 3872
95.9.3 Installation ... 3872
95.9.4 Environment ... 3872
95.9.5 Electromagnetic emission ... 3872
95.9.6 Temperature, humidity, and handling ... 3872
95.9.7 PMD labeling requirements ... 3873
95.10 Fiber optic cabling model ... 3873
95.11 Characteristics of the fiber optic cabling (channel) ... 3874
95.11.1 Optical fiber cable ... 3874
95.11.2 Optical fiber connection ... 3874
95.11.3 Medium Dependent Interface (MDI) ... 3874
95.12 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 95, Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and medium, type 100GBASE-SR4 ... 3876
95.12.1 Introduction ... 3876
95.12.2 Identification ... 3876
95.12.3 Major capabilities/options ... 3877
95.12.4 PICS proforma tables for Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and medium, type 100GBASE-SR4 ... 3878

96. Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS), Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) sublayer and baseband medium, type 100BASE-T1 ... 3882

96.1 Overview ... 3882
96.1.1 100BASE-T1 architecture ... 3883
96.1.2 Conventions in this clause ... 3884
96.2 100BASE-T1 service primitives and interfaces ... 3885
96.2.1 PMA service interface ... 3885
96.2.2 PMA_LINK.indication ... 3887
96.2.3 PMA_TXMODE.indication ... 3887
96.2.4 PMA_UNITDATA.request ... 3888
96.2.5 PMA_UNITDATA.indication ... 3888
96.2.6 PMA_SCRSTATUS.request ... 3889
96.2.7 PMA_RXSTATUS.indication ... 3889
96.2.8 PMA_REMRXSTATUS.request ... 3890
96.2.9 PMA_RESET.indication ... 3890
96.2.10 PMA_TXEN.request ... 3890
96.3 100BASE-T1 Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS) functions ... 3891
96.3.1 PCS Reset function ... 3892
96.3.2 PCS data transmission enabling ... 3893
96.3.3 PCS Transmit ... 3894
96.3.4 PCS Receive ... 3903
96.3.5 PCS Loopback ... 3909
96.4 Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) Sublayer ... 3910
96.4.1 PMA Reset function ... 3910
96.4.2 PMA Transmit function ... 3911
96.4.3 PMA Receive function ... 3912
96.4.4 PHY Control function ... 3913
96.4.5 Link Monitor function ... 3913
96.4.6 PMA clock recovery ... 3913
96.4.7 State variables ... 3913
96.5 PMA electrical specifications ... 3916
96.5.1 EMC tests ... 3916

96.5.2 Test modes ... 3917
96.5.3 Test fixtures ... 3918
96.5.4 Transmitter electrical specifications ... 3919
96.5.5 Receiver electrical specifications ... 3923
96.5.6 Transmitter peak differential output ... 3924
96.5.7 PMA Local Loopback ... 3924
96.6 Management interface ... 3925
96.6.1 MASTER-SLAVE configuration ... 3925
96.6.2 PHY-initialization ... 3925
96.6.3 PMA and PCS MDIO function mapping ... 3925
96.7 Link segment characteristics ... 3926
96.7.1 Cabling system characteristics ... 3926
96.7.2 Noise environment ... 3928
96.8 MDI specification ... 3929
96.8.1 MDI connectors ... 3929
96.8.2 MDI electrical specification ... 3929
96.8.3 MDI fault tolerance ... 3930
96.9 Environmental specifications ... 3930
96.9.1 General safety ... 3930
96.9.2 Network safety ... 3930
96.10 Delay constraints ... 3931
96.11 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 96, Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS), Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) sublayer and baseband medium, type 100BASE-T1 ... 3932
96.11.1 Introduction ... 3932
96.11.2 Identification ... 3932
96.11.3 Major capabilities/options ... 3933
96.11.4 PICS proforma tables for Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS), Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) sublayer and baseband medium, type 100BASE-T1 ... 3933

97. Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS), Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) sublayer, and baseband medium, type 1000BASE-T1 ... 3943

97.1 Overview ... 3943
97.1.1 Relationship of 1000BASE-T1 to other standards ... 3943
97.1.2 Operation of 1000BASE-T1 ... 3943
97.1.3 Signaling ... 3948
97.1.4 Interfaces ... 3948
97.1.5 Conventions in this clause ... 3948
97.2 1000BASE-T1 Service Primitives and Interfaces ... 3948
97.2.1 Technology Dependent Interface ... 3949
97.2.2 PMA service interface ... 3950
97.3 Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS) ... 3957
97.3.1 PCS service interface (GMII) ... 3957
97.3.2 PCS functions ... 3957
97.3.3 Test-pattern generators ... 3968
97.3.4 PMA training side-stream scrambler polynomials ... 3968
97.3.5 LPI signaling ... 3970
97.3.6 Detailed functions and state diagrams ... 3971
97.3.7 PCS management ... 3979
97.3.8 BASE-T1 Operations, Administration, and Maintenance (OAM) ... 3980
97.4 Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) sublayer ... 3995
97.4.1 PMA functional specifications ... 3995
97.4.2 PMA functions ... 3995

97.4.3 MDI ... 4007
97.4.4 State variables ... 4007
97.4.5 State diagrams ... 4011
97.5 PMA electrical specifications ... 4012
97.5.1 EMC Requirements ... 4012
97.5.2 Test modes ... 4012
97.5.3 Transmitter electrical specifications ... 4016
97.5.4 Receiver electrical specifications ... 4020
97.6 Link segment characteristics ... 4020
97.6.1 Link transmission parameters for link segment type A ... 4021
97.6.2 Link transmission parameters for link segment type B ... 4024
97.6.3 Coupling parameters between type A link segments ... 4026
97.6.4 Coupling parameters between type B link segments ... 4028
97.7 Media Dependent Interface (MDI) ... 4030
97.7.1 MDI connectors ... 4030
97.7.2 MDI electrical specification ... 4030
97.7.3 MDI fault tolerance ... 4031
97.8 Management Interfaces ... 4031
97.8.1 Optional Support for Auto-Negotiation ... 4031
97.9 Environmental specifications ... 4032
97.9.1 General safety ... 4032
97.9.2 Network safety ... 4032
97.10 Delay constraints ... 4032
97.11 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 97, Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS), Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) sublayer, and baseband medium, type 1000BASE-T1 ... 4034
97.11.1 Introduction ... 4034
97.11.2 Identification ... 4034
97.11.3 Major capabilities/options ... 4035
97.11.4 General ... 4035
97.11.5 Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS) ... 4036
97.11.6 PCS Receive functions ... 4037
97.11.7 PCS loopback ... 4038
97.11.8 OAM ... 4039
97.11.9 Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) ... 4040
97.11.10 PMA electrical specifications ... 4042
97.11.11 MDI electrical requirements ... 4045
97.11.12 MDI Requirements ... 4047
97.11.13 EEE capability requirements ... 4047
97.11.14 Environmental specifications ... 4048

98. Auto-Negotiation for single differential-pair media ... 4049

98.1 Overview ... 4049
98.1.1 Scope ... 4049
98.1.2 Relationship to the ISO/IEC Open Systems Interconnection (OSI) reference model ... 4049
98.2 Functional specifications ... 4049
98.2.1 Transmit function requirements ... 4050
98.2.2 Receive function requirements ... 4058
98.2.3 AN half-duplex function requirements ... 4058
98.2.4 Arbitration function requirements ... 4059
98.3 State diagram variable to Auto-Negotiation register mapping ... 4061
98.4 Technology-Dependent Interface ... 4061
98.4.1 PMA_LINK.indication ... 4062

98.4.2 PMA_LINK.request ... 4062
98.5 Detailed functions and state diagrams ... 4062
98.5.1 State diagram variables ... 4063
98.5.2 State diagram timers ... 4069
98.5.3 State diagram counters ... 4072
98.5.4 Function ... 4073
98.5.5 State diagrams ... 4073
98.5.6 High-speed and low-speed Auto-Negotiation modes ... 4076
98.6 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 98, Auto-Negotiation for Single Differential-Pair Media ... 4079
98.6.1 Introduction ... 4079
98.6.2 Identification ... 4079
98.6.3 Major capabilities/options ... 4080
98.6.4 General ... 4080
98.6.5 DME transmission ... 4080
98.6.6 Link codeword encoding ... 4081
98.6.7 Arbitration function requirements ... 4082
98.6.8 Service primitives ... 4083
98.6.9 State diagram and variable definitions ... 4084
98.6.10 High-speed and low-speed Auto-Negotiation modes ... 4086

99. MAC Merge sublayer ... 4087

99.1 Introduction ... 4087
99.1.1 Relationship to other IEEE standards ... 4088
99.1.2 Functional Block Diagram ... 4090
99.2 MAC Merge Service Interface (MMSI) ... 4090
99.2.1 MM_CTL.request ... 4090
99.3 MAC Merge Packet (mPacket) ... 4091
99.3.1 mPacket format ... 4091
99.3.2 Preamble ... 4091
99.3.3 Start mPacket Delimiter (SMD) ... 4092
99.3.4 frag_count ... 4092
99.3.5 mData ... 4093
99.3.6 CRC ... 4093
99.4 MAC Merge sublayer operation ... 4094
99.4.1 MAC Merge sublayer transmit behavior when preemption is disabled ... 4094
99.4.2 Determining that the link partner supports preemption ... 4094
99.4.3 Verifying preemption operation ... 4094
99.4.4 Transmit processing ... 4095
99.4.5 Receive processing ... 4095
99.4.6 Express filter ... 4096
99.4.7 Detailed functions and state diagrams ... 4097
99.4.8 Delay Constraints ... 4104
99.5 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 99, MAC Merge sublayer ... 4106
99.5.1 Introduction ... 4106
99.5.2 Identification ... 4106
99.5.3 PICS proforma tables for MAC Merge sublayer ... 4107

100. Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer, and medium for coaxial distribution networks, type 10GPASS-XR ... 4109

100.1 Overview ... 4109

100.1.1 Terminology and conventions 4109
100.1.2 Positioning of the PMD sublayer within the IEEE 802.3 architecture 4109
100.1.3 PMD types 4109
100.1.4 Mapping of PMD variables 4109
100.2 PMD functional specification 4113
100.2.1 PMD service interface 4113
100.2.2 Delay constraints 4114
100.2.3 PMD transmit function 4114
100.2.4 PMD receive function 4115
100.2.5 PMD transmit enable function 4115
100.3 PMD operational requirements 4115
100.3.1 CLT and CNU modulation formats 4115
100.3.2 Data rates 4116
100.3.3 CLT transmitter requirements 4118
100.3.4 CNU transmitter requirements 4127
100.3.5 CLT receiver requirements 4138
100.3.6 CNU receiver requirements 4141
100.3.7 Channel band rules 4144
100.4 Test requirements and measurement methods 4145
100.4.1 CLT RF output muting requirement 4145
100.4.2 CNU receive modulation error ratio testing 4146
100.4.3 Upstream channel power 4146
100.4.4 Guidelines for verifying compliance with downstream phase noise requirements 4147
100.5 Environmental, safety, and labeling 4149
100.5.1 General safety 4149
100.5.2 Installation 4149
100.5.3 Environment 4149
100.5.4 PMD labeling 4149
100.6 EEE capability 4149
100.7 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 100, Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and medium for coaxial cable distribution networks, type 10GPASS-XR 4150
100.7.1 Identification 4150
100.7.2 Major capabilities/options 4151
100.7.3 PICS proforma tables for Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer for coax cable distribution networks, type 10GPASS-XR 4152

101. Reconciliation Sublayer, Physical Coding Sublayer, and Physical Media Attachment for EPoC 4156

101.1 Overview 4156
101.1.1 Conventions 4156
101.1.2 Constraints for delay through RS, PCS, and PMA 4156
101.1.3 Mapping of PCS, and PMA variables 4156
101.1.4 Functional blocks supporting 10GPASS-XR PCS, PMA, and PMD sublayers 4156
101.2 Reconciliation Sublayer (RS) for EPoC 4164
101.3 Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS) for EPoC 4164
101.3.1 Overview 4164
101.3.2 PCS transmit function 4166
101.3.3 PCS receive function 4185
101.4 10GPASS-XR PMA 4196
101.4.1 Overview 4196
101.4.2 PMA Service Interface 4197
101.4.3 Downstream PMA transmit function 4198
101.4.4 Upstream PMA transmit function 4224

101.4.5 Constellation structure and mapping 4246
101.4.6 PMA testing 4251
101.5 Applicability of Clause 90 and IEEE Std 802.1AS, Clause 13 for EPoC time transport 4252
101.5.1 CLT PHY asymmetry correction of future time transmitted by the CLT to CNUi 4252
101.5.2 CNU PHY asymmetry correction of future time received by CNU_i 4252
101.6 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 101, Reconciliation Sublayer, Physical Coding Sublayer, and Physical Media Attachment for EPoC 4254
101.6.1 Introduction 4254
101.6.2 Identification 4254
101.6.3 Major capabilities/options 4255
101.6.4 PICS proforma tables for Reconciliation Sublayer, Physical Coding Sublayer, and Physical Media Attachment for EPoC 4255

102. EPoC PHY Link 4262

102.1 PHY Link overview and architecture 4262
102.1.1 PHY Link frame structure and protocol 4262
102.1.2 PHY Link block diagram 4264
102.1.3 PHY Link Message Engine 4265
102.1.4 PHY Link FEC encoder 4266
102.1.5 PHY Link scrambler 4268
102.1.6 PHY Link symbol map and constellation mapping 4268
102.1.7 Interleaving 4269
102.1.8 Mapping of PHY Link variables 4269
102.2 Downstream PHY Link 4273
102.2.1 Downstream PHY Link Physical Layer 4273
102.2.2 Downstream preamble 4276
102.2.3 Downstream frame 4277
102.2.4 Downstream PHY Link FEC 4283
102.2.5 Downstream PHY Link response time. 4283
102.2.6 PHY Link managed variables 4283
102.2.7 Downstream state diagrams 4284
102.3 Upstream PHY Link 4289
102.3.1 Upstream PHY Link Physical Layer 4289
102.3.2 Upstream PHY Link frame 4289
102.3.3 Upstream PHY Link FEC 4291
102.3.4 Upstream PHY Link pilot pattern 4291
102.3.5 Upstream state diagrams 4291
102.4 PHY Link applications 4294
102.4.1 PHY Discovery 4295
102.4.2 Upstream Wideband Probing 4303
102.4.3 Link-up declaration 4310
102.4.4 Link-down declaration 4311
102.4.5 OFDM Profile descriptors 4312
102.5 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 102, EPoC PHY Link 4314
102.5.1 Introduction 4314
102.5.2 Identification 4314
102.5.3 Major capabilities/options 4315
102.5.4 PICS proforma tables for EPoC PHY Link 4315

103. Multipoint MAC Control for EPoC 4322

103.1 Overview ... 4322
103.1.1 Position of Multipoint MAC Control within the IEEE 802.3 hierarchy ... 4324
103.1.2 Functional block diagram ... 4326
103.1.3 Service interfaces ... 4327
103.1.4 State diagram conventions ... 4327
103.1.5 Other conventions ... 4327
103.2 Multipoint MAC Control operation ... 4327
103.2.1 Principles of Multipoint MAC Control ... 4327
103.2.2 Multipoint transmission control, Control Parser, and Control Multiplexer ... 4328
103.3 Multipoint Control Protocol (MPCP) ... 4342
103.3.1 Principles of Multipoint Control Protocol ... 4342
103.3.2 Compatibility considerations ... 4342
103.3.3 Discovery processing ... 4342
103.3.4 Report Processing ... 4353
103.3.5 Gate Processing ... 4353
103.3.6 MPCPDU structure and encoding ... 4361
103.4 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 103, Multipoint MAC Control for EPoC ... 4364
103.4.1 Introduction ... 4364
103.4.2 Identification ... 4364
103.4.3 Major capabilities/options ... 4365
103.4.4 PICS proforma tables for Multipoint MAC Control ... 4365

104. Power over Data Lines (PoDL) of Single-Pair Ethernet ... 4370

104.1 Overview ... 4370
104.1.1 Compatibility considerations ... 4370
104.1.2 Relationship of PoDL to the IEEE 802.3 architecture ... 4370
104.1.3 PoDL system types ... 4371
104.2 Link segment ... 4372
104.3 Class power requirements ... 4372
104.4 Power Sourcing Equipment (PSE) ... 4373
104.4.1 PSE types ... 4374
104.4.2 PI pin assignments ... 4374
104.4.3 PSE classes ... 4374
104.4.4 PSE state diagram ... 4374
104.4.5 PSE detection of a PD ... 4381
104.4.6 PSE classification of a PD ... 4382
104.4.7 PSE output requirements ... 4382
104.4.8 PSE power removal ... 4387
104.5 Powered Device (PD) ... 4387
104.5.1 PD types ... 4387
104.5.2 PD PI ... 4387
104.5.3 PD classes ... 4388
104.5.4 PD state diagram ... 4388
104.5.5 PD signature ... 4391
104.5.6 PD classification and mutual identification between the PSE and PD ... 4392
104.5.7 PD power ... 4392
104.5.8 PD Maintain full voltage ... 4396
104.6 Additional electrical specifications ... 4396
104.6.1 Isolation ... 4396
104.6.2 Fault tolerance ... 4397
104.7 Serial communication classification protocol (SCCP) ... 4397
104.7.1 SCCP signaling ... 4397

104.7.2 Serial communication classification protocols 4403
104.8 Environmental 4407
104.8.1 General safety 4407
104.8.2 Network safety 4407
104.8.3 Installation and maintenance guidelines 4407
104.8.4 Patch panel considerations 4408
104.8.5 Telephony voltages 4408
104.8.6 Electromagnetic emissions 4408
104.8.7 Temperature and humidity 4408
104.9 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 104, Power over Data Lines (PoDL) of Single-Pair Ethernet 4409
104.9.1 Introduction 4409
104.9.2 Identification 4409
104.9.3 Major capabilities/options 4410
104.9.4 PICS proforma tables for Clause 104, Power over Data Lines (PoDL) of Single-Pair Ethernet 4411

105. Introduction to 25 Gb/s networks 4421

105.1 Overview 4421
105.1.1 Scope 4421
105.1.2 Relationship of 25 Gigabit Ethernet to the ISO OSI reference model 4421
105.1.3 Nomenclature 4422
105.2 Physical Layer signaling systems 4423
105.3 Summary of 25 Gigabit Ethernet sublayers 4424
105.3.1 Reconciliation Sublayer (RS) and 25 Gigabit Media Independent Interface (25GMII). 4424
105.3.2 Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS) 4425
105.3.3 Forward error correction (FEC) sublayer 4425
105.3.4 Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) sublayer 4425
105.3.5 Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer 4425
105.3.6 Auto-Negotiation (AN) 4425
105.3.7 Management interface (MDIO/MDC) 4425
105.3.8 Management 4426
105.4 Service interface specification method and notation 4426
105.4.1 Inter-sublayer service interface 4426
105.4.2 Instances of the Inter-sublayer service interface 4427
105.4.3 Semantics of inter-sublayer service interface primitives 4427
105.5 Delay constraints 4432
105.6 State diagrams 4433
105.7 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma 4434

106. Reconciliation Sublayer (RS) and Media Independent Interface (25GMII) for 25 Gb/s operation . 4435

106.1 Overview 4435
106.1.1 Summary of major concepts 4436
106.1.2 Application 4436
106.1.3 Rate of operation 4436
106.1.4 Delay constraints 4436
106.1.5 Allocation of functions 4437
106.1.6 25GMII structure 4437
106.1.7 Mapping of 25GMII signals to PLS service primitives 4437
106.2 25GMII data stream 4438
106.3 25GMII functional specifications 4438
106.4 LPI Assertion and Detection 4438

106.5 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 106 Reconciliation Sublayer (RS) and Media Independent Interface (25GMII) for 25 Gb/s operation ... 4439
106.5.1 Introduction ... 4439
106.5.2 Identification ... 4439
106.5.3 PICS proforma Tables for Reconciliation Sublayer and 25 Gigabit Media Independent Interface ... 4440

107. Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS) for 64B/66B, type 25GBASE-R ... 4441

107.1 Overview ... 4441
107.1.1 Scope ... 4441
107.1.2 Relationship of 25GBASE-R to other standards ... 4441
107.1.3 Summary of 25GBASE-R sublayers ... 4441
107.1.4 Inter-sublayer interfaces ... 4441
107.2 Functions within the PCS ... 4442
107.2.1 Notation conventions ... 4443
107.2.2 Transmission order ... 4443
107.2.3 Test-pattern generator ... 4444
107.3 LPI ... 4444
107.4 Delay constraints ... 4445
107.5 Support for Auto-Negotiation ... 4445
107.6 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 107, Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS) for 64B/66B, type 25GBASE-R ... 4446
107.6.1 Introduction ... 4446
107.6.2 Identification ... 4446
107.6.3 Major capabilities/options ... 4447
107.6.4 25G PCS ... 4447

108. Reed-Solomon forward error correction (RS-FEC) sublayer for 10GBASE-R and 25GBASE-R PHYs ... 4449

108.1 Overview ... 4449
108.1.1 Scope ... 4449
108.1.2 Position of RS-FEC in the 10GBASE-R and 25GBASE-R PHY sublayers ... 4449
108.1.3 Inter-sublayer interfaces ... 4450
108.2 FEC service interface ... 4452
108.2.1 10GBASE-R service primitives ... 4453
108.2.2 25GBASE-R service primitives ... 4454
108.3 PMA compatibility ... 4455
108.4 Delay constraints ... 4455
108.5 Functions within the RS-FEC sublayer ... 4456
108.5.1 Functional block diagram ... 4456
108.5.2 Transmit function ... 4457
108.5.3 Receive function ... 4461
108.5.4 Detailed functions and state diagrams ... 4464
108.6 RS-FEC MDIO function mapping ... 4469
108.6.1 FEC_bypass_correction_enable ... 4470
108.6.2 FEC_bypass_indication_enable ... 4470
108.6.3 RS-FEC Enable ... 4471
108.6.4 FEC_bypass_correction_ability ... 4471
108.6.5 FEC_bypass_indication_ability ... 4471
108.6.6 FEC_high_ser ... 4471
108.6.7 FEC_corrected_cw_counter ... 4471

108.6.8 FEC_uncorrected_cw_counter ... 4471
108.6.9 FEC_symbol_error_counter_0 ... 4472
108.6.10align_status ... 4472
108.7 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 108, Reed-Solomon forward error correction (RS-FEC) sublayer for 10GBASE-R and 25GBASE-R PHYs ... 4473
108.7.1 Introduction ... 4473
108.7.2 Identification ... 4473
108.7.3 Major capabilities/options ... 4474
108.7.4 PICS proforma tables for Reed-Solomon forward error correction (RS-FEC) sublayer for 10GBASE-R and 25GBASE-R PHYs ... 4474

109. Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) sublayer, type 25GBASE-R ... 4477

109.1 Overview ... 4477
109.1.1 Scope ... 4477
109.1.2 Position of the PMA in the 25GBASE-R sublayers ... 4477
109.1.3 Summary of functions ... 4478
109.1.4 PMA sublayer positioning ... 4479
109.2 PMA service interface ... 4480
109.3 Service interface below PMA ... 4481
109.4 Functions within the PMA ... 4482
109.4.1 Signal drivers ... 4482
109.4.2 PMA local loopback mode ... 4482
109.4.3 PMA remote loopback mode ... 4482
109.4.4 PMA test patterns ... 4482
109.4.5 Energy Efficient Ethernet for 25GAUI ... 4485
109.5 Delay constraints ... 4485
109.6 PMA MDIO function mapping ... 4485
109.7 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 109, Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) sublayer, type 25GBASE-R ... 4488
109.7.1 Introduction ... 4488
109.7.2 Identification ... 4488
109.7.3 PICS proforma tables for the 25GBASE-R PMA Sublayer ... 4489
109.7.4 Major capabilities/options ... 4489

110. Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and baseband medium, type 25GBASE-CR and 25GBASE-CR-S ... 4491

110.1 Overview ... 4491
110.2 PMD service interface ... 4492
110.3 PCS requirements for Auto-Negotiation (AN) service interface ... 4493
110.4 Delay constraints ... 4493
110.5 PMD MDIO function mapping ... 4494
110.6 FEC modes ... 4494
110.7 PMD functional specifications ... 4495
110.7.1 Link block diagram ... 4495
110.7.2 PMD transmit function ... 4496
110.7.3 PMD receive function ... 4497
110.7.4 Global PMD signal detect function ... 4497
110.7.5 Global PMD transmit disable function ... 4497
110.7.6 Loopback mode ... 4498
110.7.7 PMD fault function ... 4498
110.7.8 PMD transmit fault function ... 4498

110.7.9 PMD receive fault function ... 4498
110.7.10 PMD control function ... 4498
110.8 Electrical characteristics ... 4498
110.8.1 Signal levels ... 4498
110.8.2 Signal paths ... 4499
110.8.3 Transmitter characteristics ... 4499
110.8.4 Receiver characteristics ... 4499
110.9 Channel characteristics ... 4504
110.10 Cable assembly characteristics ... 4504
110.10.1 Characteristic impedance and reference impedance ... 4505
110.10.2 Cable assembly insertion loss ... 4505
110.10.3 Cable assembly differential return loss ... 4505
110.10.4 Differential to common-mode return loss ... 4506
110.10.5 Differential to common-mode conversion loss ... 4506
110.10.6 Common-mode to common-mode return loss ... 4506
110.10.7 Cable assembly Channel Operating Margin ... 4506
110.11 MDI specification ... 4510
110.11.1 Single-lane MDI connectors ... 4510
110.12 Environmental specifications ... 4511
110.13 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 110, Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and baseband medium, type 25GBASE-CR and 25GBASE-CR-S ... 4512
110.13.1 Introduction ... 4512
110.13.2 Identification ... 4512
110.13.3 Major capabilities/options ... 4513
110.13.4 PICS proforma tables for Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and baseband medium, type 25GBASE-CR and 25GBASE-CR-S ... 4514

111. Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and baseband medium, type 25GBASE-KR and 25GBASE-KR-S ... 4520

111.1 Overview ... 4520
111.2 PMD service interface ... 4521
111.3 PCS requirements for Auto-Negotiation (AN) service interface ... 4522
111.4 Delay constraints ... 4522
111.5 PMD MDIO function mapping ... 4522
111.6 FEC modes ... 4523
111.7 PMD functional specifications ... 4524
111.7.1 Link block diagram ... 4524
111.7.2 PMD transmit function ... 4524
111.7.3 PMD receive function ... 4525
111.7.4 Global PMD signal detect function ... 4525
111.7.5 Global PMD transmit disable function ... 4525
111.7.6 Loopback mode ... 4525
111.7.7 PMD fault function ... 4526
111.7.8 PMD transmit fault function ... 4526
111.7.9 PMD receive fault function ... 4526
111.7.10 PMD control function ... 4526
111.8 Electrical characteristics ... 4526
111.8.1 MDI ... 4526
111.8.2 Transmitter characteristics ... 4527
111.8.3 Receiver characteristics ... 4527
111.9 Channel characteristics ... 4530
111.9.1 25GBASE-KR channel ... 4530

111.9.2 25GBASE-KR-S channel 4530
111.10 Environmental specifications 4531
111.11 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 111, Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and baseband medium, type 25GBASE-KR and 25GBASE-KR-S 4532
111.11.1 Introduction 4532
111.11.2 Identification 4532
111.11.3 Major capabilities/options 4533
111.11.4 PICS proforma tables for Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and baseband medium, type 25GBASE-KR and 25GBASE-KR-S 4533

112. Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and medium, type 25GBASE-SR 4539

112.1 Overview 4539
112.1.1 Bit error ratio 4540
112.2 Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) service interface 4540
112.3 Delay constraints 4541
112.4 PMD MDIO function mapping 4541
112.5 PMD functional specifications 4542
112.5.1 PMD block diagram 4542
112.5.2 PMD transmit function 4543
112.5.3 PMD receive function 4543
112.5.4 PMD global signal detect function 4543
112.5.5 PMD reset function 4544
112.5.6 PMD global transmit disable function (optional) 4544
112.5.7 PMD fault function (optional) 4544
112.5.8 PMD transmit fault function (optional) 4544
112.5.9 PMD receive fault function (optional) 4544
112.6 PMD to MDI optical specifications for 25GBASE-SR 4544
112.6.1 25GBASE-SR transmitter optical specifications 4545
112.6.2 25GBASE-SR receive optical specifications 4545
112.6.3 25GBASE-SR illustrative link power budget 4545
112.7 Definition of optical parameters and measurement methods 4545
112.7.1 Test patterns for optical parameters 4545
112.7.2 Center wavelength and spectral width 4546
112.7.3 Average optical power 4546
112.7.4 Optical Modulation Amplitude (OMA) 4546
112.7.5 Transmitter and dispersion eye closure (TDEC) 4546
112.7.6 Extinction ratio 4546
112.7.7 Transmitter optical waveform (transmit eye) 4546
112.7.8 Stressed receiver sensitivity 4546
112.8 Safety, installation, environment, and labeling 4546
112.8.1 General safety 4546
112.8.2 Laser safety 4547
112.8.3 Installation 4547
112.8.4 Environment 4547
112.8.5 Electromagnetic emission 4547
112.8.6 Temperature, humidity, and handling 4547
112.8.7 PMD labeling requirements 4547
112.9 Fiber optic cabling model 4548
112.10 Characteristics of the fiber optic cabling (channel) 4548
112.10.1 Optical fiber cable 4548
112.10.2 Optical fiber connection 4548
112.10.3 Medium Dependent Interface (MDI) 4549

112.11 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 112, Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and medium, type 25GBASE-SR 4550
112.11.1 Introduction 4550
112.11.2 Identification 4550
112.11.3 Major capabilities/options 4551
112.11.4 PICS proforma tables for Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and medium, type 25GBASE-SR 4551

113. Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS), Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) sublayer, and baseband medium, types 25GBASE-T and 40GBASE-T 4554

113.1 Overview 4554
113.1.1 Nomenclature 4554
113.1.2 Relationship of 25GBASE-T and 40GBASE-T to other standards 4555
113.1.3 Operation of 25GBASE-T and 40GBASE-T 4555
113.1.4 Signaling 4561
113.1.5 Interfaces 4562
113.1.6 Conventions in this clause 4562
113.2 25GBASE-T and 40GBASE-T service primitives and interfaces 4562
113.2.1 Technology Dependent Interface 4563
113.2.2 PMA service interface 4564
113.3 Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS) 4571
113.3.1 PCS service interface (25GMII/XLGMII) 4571
113.3.2 PCS functions 4572
113.3.3 Test-pattern generators 4594
113.3.4 PMA training side-stream scrambler polynomials 4595
113.3.5 LPI signaling 4596
113.3.6 Detailed functions and state diagrams 4599
113.3.7 PCS management 4605
113.4 Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) sublayer 4612
113.4.1 PMA functional specifications 4612
113.4.2 PMA functions 4613
113.4.3 MDI 4626
113.4.4 Automatic MDI/MDI-X configuration 4628
113.4.5 State variables 4628
113.4.6 State diagrams 4633
113.5 PMA electrical specifications 4636
113.5.1 Electrical isolation 4636
113.5.2 Test modes 4636
113.5.3 Transmitter electrical specifications 4641
113.5.4 Receiver electrical specifications 4643
113.6 Management interfaces 4645
113.6.1 Support for Auto-Negotiation 4645
113.6.2 MASTER-SLAVE configuration resolution 4648
113.7 Link segment characteristics 4650
113.7.1 Cabling system characteristics 4651
113.7.2 Link segment transmission parameters 4651
113.7.3 Coupling parameters between link segments 4656
113.7.4 Direct attach cable assembly—Short Reach Mode 4658
113.7.5 Noise environment 4662
113.8 MDI specification 4663
113.8.1 MDI connectors 4663
113.8.2 MDI electrical specifications 4664
113.9 Environmental specifications 4666

113.9.1 General safety 4666
113.9.2 Network safety 4666
113.9.3 Installation and maintenance guidelines 4666
113.9.4 Telephone voltages 4667
113.9.5 Electromagnetic compatibility 4667
113.9.6 Temperature and humidity 4667
113.10 PHY labeling 4667
113.11 Delay constraints 4667
113.12 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 113, Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS), Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) sublayer, and baseband medium, types 25GBASE-T and 40GBASE-T 4669
113.12.1Identification 4669
113.12.2Major capabilities/options 4670
113.12.3Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS) 4670
113.12.4Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) 4672
113.12.5Management interface 4675
113.12.6PMA Electrical Specifications 4676
113.12.7Characteristics of the link segment 4677
113.12.8Characteristics of the direct attach cable assembly 4678
113.12.9MDI requirements 4678
113.12.10General safety and environmental requirements 4679
113.12.11Timing requirements 4679

114. Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and medium, types 25GBASE-LR and 25GBASE-ER 4680

114.1 Overview 4680
114.1.1 Bit error ratio 4681
114.2 Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) service interface 4681
114.3 Delay constraints 4681
114.4 PMD MDIO function mapping 4682
114.5 PMD functional specifications 4682
114.5.1 PMD block diagram 4682
114.5.2 PMD transmit function 4683
114.5.3 PMD receive function 4683
114.5.4 PMD global signal detect function 4683
114.5.5 PMD reset function 4684
114.5.6 PMD global transmit disable function (optional) 4684
114.5.7 PMD fault function (optional) 4684
114.5.8 PMD transmit fault function (optional) 4684
114.5.9 PMD receive fault function (optional) 4684
114.6 PMD to MDI optical specifications for 25GBASE-LR and 25GBASE-ER 4685
114.6.1 25GBASE-LR and 25GBASE-ER transmitter optical specifications 4686
114.6.2 25GBASE-LR and 25GBASE-ER receive optical specifications 4687
114.6.3 25GBASE-LR and 25GBASE-ER illustrative link power budgets 4688
114.7 Definition of optical parameters and measurement methods 4688
114.7.1 Test patterns for optical parameters 4688
114.7.2 Wavelength and side mode suppression ratio (SMSR) 4688
114.7.3 Average optical power 4689
114.7.4 Optical Modulation Amplitude (OMA) 4689
114.7.5 Transmitter and dispersion penalty (TDP) 4689
114.7.6 Extinction ratio 4690
114.7.7 Relative Intensity Noise ($RIN_{20}OMA$) 4690
114.7.8 Transmitter optical waveform (transmit eye) 4690

114.7.9 Receiver sensitivity ... 4691
114.7.10 Stressed receiver sensitivity ... 4691
114.8 Safety, installation, environment, and labeling ... 4691
114.9 Fiber optic cabling model ... 4691
114.10 Characteristics of the fiber optic cabling (channel) ... 4692
114.11 Requirements for interoperation between 25GBASE-LR and 25GBASE-ER ... 4693
114.12 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 114, Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and medium, types 25GBASE-LR and 25GBASE-ER ... 4694
114.12.1 Introduction ... 4694
114.12.2 Identification ... 4694
114.12.3 Major capabilities/options ... 4695
114.12.4 PICS proforma tables for Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and medium, types 25GBASE-LR and 25GBASE-ER ... 4696

115. Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS), Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) sublayer, and Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer, types 1000BASE-RHA, 1000BASE-RHB, and 1000BASE-RHC ... 4699

115.1 Overview ... 4699
115.1.1 Features ... 4699
115.1.2 Conventions ... 4699
115.1.3 Relationship of 1000BASE-RHx to other standards ... 4699
115.1.4 Relationship to other Gigabit Ethernet PHY types ... 4700
115.1.5 Operation of 1000BASE-RHx ... 4700
115.1.6 Functional block diagram ... 4702
115.2 Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS) ... 4703
115.2.1 Transmit Block ... 4703
115.2.2 Pilots data path ... 4705
115.2.3 Physical header encoding and scrambling ... 4707
115.2.4 Payload data encoding and scrambling ... 4709
115.2.5 PCS receive function ... 4719
115.3 Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) sublayer ... 4721
115.3.1 PMA transmit function ... 4721
115.3.2 PMA receive function ... 4722
115.3.3 Interface to the PMD ... 4723
115.3.4 Physical Header Data (PHD) ... 4724
115.3.5 PHY control ... 4727
115.3.6 Adaptive THP protocol ... 4734
115.3.7 PHY quality monitor ... 4738
115.3.8 Fixed-point format formal definition ... 4742
115.4 Energy-Efficient Ethernet (EEE) ... 4742
115.4.1 LPI mode transmit operation ... 4744
115.4.2 LPI mode receive operation ... 4744
115.4.3 PMD power control state variables ... 4745
115.4.4 PMD power control state diagrams ... 4745
115.5 Test modes ... 4747
115.5.1 Test mode 1 ... 4748
115.5.2 Test mode 2 ... 4748
115.5.3 Test mode 3 ... 4748
115.5.4 Test mode 4 ... 4748
115.5.5 Test mode 5 ... 4748
115.5.6 Test mode 6 ... 4748
115.6 Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer ... 4750

115.6.1 PMD service interface 4750
115.6.2 PMD functional specifications 4753
115.6.3 PMD to MDI optical specifications 4755
115.6.4 Optical measurement requirements 4759
115.7 Characteristics of the fiber optic cabling (channel) 4765
115.7.1 Transfer function of fiber optic channel type I 4767
115.7.2 Transfer function of fiber optic channel type II 4768
115.7.3 Transfer function of fiber optic channel type III 4769
115.7.4 Fiber optic channel insertion loss measurement 4770
115.7.5 Fiber optic channel transfer function measurement 4770
115.7.6 Worst-case 1000BASE-RHx link power budget 4770
115.8 Medium Dependent Interface (MDI) 4770
115.8.1 MDI mechanical interface for 1000BASE-RHA 4770
115.9 1000BASE-H Operations, Administration, and Maintenance (1000BASE-H OAM) channel 4772
115.9.1 1000BASE-H OAM message transmission protocol 4772
115.9.2 1000BASE-H OAM channel status 4773
115.9.3 1000BASE-H OAM message reception protocol 4774
115.9.4 1000BASE-H OAM channel state diagrams descriptions 4775
115.10 Loopback modes 4780
115.11 Management interface 4780
115.12 Environmental specifications 4780
115.12.1 Temperature classes 4780
115.12.2 General safety 4781
115.12.3 Environmental safety 4781
115.12.4 Electromagnetic compatibility 4782
115.12.5 Optical safety 4782
115.13 Delay constraints 4782
115.14 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 115, Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS), Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) sublayer, and Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer, types 1000BASE-RHA, 1000BASE-RHB, and 1000BASE-RHC 4783
115.14.1 Introduction 4783
115.14.2 Identification 4783
115.14.3 Major capabilities/options 4784
115.14.4 Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS) 4785
115.14.5 Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) 4787
115.14.6 Energy-Efficient Ethernet (EEE) 4789
115.14.7 Test modes 4790
115.14.8 Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) 4791
115.14.9 PMD to MDI optical specifications 4792
115.14.10 Optical measurement requirements 4793
115.14.11 Characteristics of the fiber optic cabling (channel) 4794
115.14.12 Medium dependent interface (MDI) 4794
115.14.13 1000BASE-H Operations, Administration, and Maintenance (1000BASE-H OAM) channel 4795
115.14.14 Loopback modes 4796
115.14.15 Management Interface 4796
115.14.16 Environmental specifications 4796
115.14.17 Delay constraints 4797

116. Introduction to 200 Gb/s and 400 Gb/s networks 4798

116.1 Overview 4798

116.1.1 Scope ... 4798
116.1.2 Relationship of 200 Gigabit and 400 Gigabit Ethernet to the ISO OSI reference model ... 4798
116.1.3 Nomenclature ... 4799
116.1.4 Physical Layer signaling systems ... 4801
116.2 Summary of 200 Gigabit and 400 Gigabit Ethernet sublayers ... 4802
116.2.1 Reconciliation Sublayer (RS) and Media Independent Interface ... 4802
116.2.2 200GMII and 400GMII Extender Sublayers (200GXS and 400GXS) ... 4802
116.2.3 Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS) ... 4803
116.2.4 Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) sublayer ... 4803
116.2.5 Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer ... 4803
116.2.6 Management interface (MDIO/MDC) ... 4803
116.2.7 Management ... 4803
116.3 Service interface specification method and notation ... 4803
116.3.1 Inter-sublayer service interface ... 4804
116.3.2 Instances of the Inter-sublayer service interface ... 4804
116.3.3 Semantics of inter-sublayer service interface primitives ... 4804
116.4 Delay constraints ... 4807
116.5 Skew constraints ... 4809
116.6 FEC Degrade ... 4813
116.7 State diagrams ... 4814
116.8 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma ... 4815

117. Reconciliation Sublayer (RS) and Media Independent Interface for 200 Gb/s and 400 Gb/s operation (200GMII and 400GMII) ... 4816

117.1 Overview ... 4816
117.1.1 Summary of major concepts ... 4817
117.1.2 Application ... 4817
117.1.3 Rate of operation ... 4817
117.1.4 Delay constraints ... 4817
117.1.5 Allocation of functions ... 4818
117.1.6 200GMII/400GMII structure ... 4818
117.1.7 Mapping of 200GMII/400GMII signals to PLS service primitives ... 4818
117.2 200GMII/400GMII data stream ... 4818
117.3 200GMII/400GMII functional specifications ... 4818
117.4 LPI Assertion and Detection ... 4818
117.5 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 117, Reconciliation Sublayer (RS) and Media Independent Interface for 200 Gb/s and 400 Gb/s operation (200GMII and 400GMII) ... 4819
117.5.1 Introduction ... 4819
117.5.2 Identification ... 4819
117.5.3 Major capabilities/options ... 4820
117.5.4 PICS proforma tables for Reconciliation Sublayer (RS) and Media Independent Interface for 200 Gb/s and 400 Gb/s operation (200GMII and 400GMII) ... 4820

118. 200GMII Extender, 400GMII Extender, 200GMII Extender Sublayer (200GXS), and 400GMII Extender Sublayer (400GXS) ... 4823

118.1 Overview ... 4823
118.1.1 Summary of major concepts ... 4824
118.1.2 200GXS/400GXS Sublayer ... 4824
118.1.3 200GAUI-n/400GAUI-n ... 4824
118.2 FEC Degrade ... 4824

118.2.1 DTE XS FEC Degrade signaling 4824
118.2.2 PHY XS FEC Degrade signaling 4825
118.3 200GXS and 400GXS partitioning example 4825
118.4 200GXS and 400GXS MDIO function mapping 4825
118.5 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 118, 200GMII Extender, 400GMII Extender, 200GMII Extender Sublayer (200GXS), and 400GMII Extender Sublayer (400GXS) 4829
118.5.1 Introduction 4829
118.5.2 Identification 4829
118.5.3 Major capabilities/options 4830
118.5.4 PICS proforma tables for 200GMII Extender, 400GMII Extender, 200GMII Extender Sublayer (200GXS), and 400GMII Extender Sublayer (400GXS) 4830
118.5.5 Test-pattern modes 4832
118.5.6 Bit order 4832
118.5.7 Management 4833

119. Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS) for 64B/66B, type 200GBASE-R and 400GBASE-R 4835

119.1 Overview 4835
119.1.1 Scope 4835
119.1.2 Relationship of 200GBASE-R and 400GBASE-R to other standards 4835
119.1.3 Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS) 4835
119.1.4 Inter-sublayer interfaces 4836
119.1.5 Functional block diagram 4837
119.2 Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS) 4838
119.2.1 Functions within the PCS 4838
119.2.2 Use of blocks 4838
119.2.3 64B/66B code 4839
119.2.4 Transmit 4840
119.2.5 Receive function 4853
119.2.6 Detailed functions and state diagrams 4856
119.3 PCS management 4865
119.3.1 PCS MDIO function mapping 4865
119.3.2 FEC_corrected_cw_counter 4866
119.3.3 FEC_uncorrected_cw_counter 4866
119.3.4 FEC_symbol_error_counter_i 4866
119.4 Loopback 4866
119.5 Delay constraints 4867
119.6 Auto-Negotiation 4867
119.7 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 119, Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS) for 64B/66B, type 200GBASE-R and 400GBASE-R 4868
119.7.1 Introduction 4868
119.7.2 Identification 4868
119.7.3 Major capabilities/options 4869
119.7.4 PICS proforma tables for Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS) 64B/66B, type 200GBASE-R and 400GBASE-R 4869

120. Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) sublayer, type 200GBASE-R and 400GBASE-R 4874

120.1 Overview 4874
120.1.1 Scope 4874
120.1.2 Position of the PMA in the 200GBASE-R and 400GBASE-R sublayers 4874
120.1.3 Summary of functions 4874
120.1.4 PMA sublayer positioning 4875

120.2 PMA interfaces 4877
120.3 PMA service interface 4877
120.4 Service interface below PMA 4880
120.5 Functions within the PMA 4881
120.5.1 Per input-lane clock and data recovery 4881
120.5.2 Bit-level multiplexing 4881
120.5.3 Skew and Skew Variation 4882
120.5.4 Delay constraints 4884
120.5.5 Clocking architecture 4884
120.5.6 Signal drivers 4885
120.5.7 PAM4 Encoding 4885
120.5.8 Link status 4886
120.5.9 PMA local loopback mode (optional) 4886
120.5.10 PMA remote loopback mode (optional) 4887
120.5.11 PMA test patterns (optional) 4887
120.6 PMA MDIO function mapping 4893
120.7 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 120, Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) sublayer, type 200GBASE-R and 400GBASE-R 4898
120.7.1 Introduction 4898
120.7.2 Identification 4898
120.7.3 Major capabilities/options 4899
120.7.4 Skew generation and tolerance 4901
120.7.5 Test patterns 4901
120.7.6 Loopback modes 4902
120.7.7 Encoding 4903

121. Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and medium, type 200GBASE-DR4 4904

121.1 Overview 4904
121.1.1 Bit error ratio 4904
121.2 Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) service interface 4905
121.3 Delay and Skew 4906
121.3.1 Delay constraints 4906
121.3.2 Skew constraints 4906
121.4 PMD MDIO function mapping 4907
121.5 PMD functional specifications 4907
121.5.1 PMD block diagram 4907
121.5.2 PMD transmit function 4908
121.5.3 PMD receive function 4908
121.5.4 PMD global signal detect function 4908
121.5.5 PMD lane-by-lane signal detect function 4909
121.5.6 PMD reset function 4909
121.5.7 PMD global transmit disable function (optional) 4909
121.5.8 PMD lane-by-lane transmit disable function (optional) 4910
121.5.9 PMD fault function (optional) 4910
121.5.10 PMD transmit fault function (optional) 4910
121.5.11 PMD receive fault function (optional) 4910
121.6 Lane assignments 4910
121.7 PMD to MDI optical specifications for 200GBASE-DR4 4910
121.7.1 200GBASE-DR4 transmitter optical specifications 4911
121.7.2 200GBASE-DR4 receive optical specifications 4911
121.7.3 200GBASE-DR4 illustrative link power budget 4912
121.8 Definition of optical parameters and measurement methods 4913
121.8.1 Test patterns for optical parameters 4913

121.8.2 Wavelength and side mode suppression ratio (SMSR) 4914
121.8.3 Average optical power 4914
121.8.4 Outer Optical Modulation Amplitude (OMAouter) 4914
121.8.5 Transmitter and dispersion eye closure for PAM4 (TDECQ) 4914
121.8.6 Extinction ratio 4920
121.8.7 Transmitter transition time 4920
121.8.8 Relative intensity noise (RIN21.4OMA) 4920
121.8.9 Receiver sensitivity 4921
121.8.10 Stressed receiver sensitivity 4921
121.9 Safety, installation, environment, and labeling 4925
121.9.1 General safety 4925
121.9.2 Laser safety 4925
121.9.3 Installation 4925
121.9.4 Environment 4925
121.9.5 Electromagnetic emission 4925
121.9.6 Temperature, humidity, and handling 4925
121.9.7 PMD labeling requirements 4926
121.10 Fiber optic cabling model 4926
121.11 Characteristics of the fiber optic cabling (channel) 4927
121.11.1 Optical fiber cable 4927
121.11.2 Optical fiber connection 4927
121.11.3 Medium Dependent Interface (MDI) 4927
121.12 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 121, Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and medium, type 200GBASE-DR4 4930
121.12.1 Introduction 4930
121.12.2 Identification 4930
121.12.3 Major capabilities/options 4931
121.12.4 PICS proforma tables for Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and medium, type 200GBASE-DR4 4931

122. Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and medium, type 200GBASE-FR4, 200GBASE-LR4, 200GBASE-ER4, 400GBASE-FR8, 400GBASE-LR8, and 400GBASE-ER8 4934

122.1 Overview 4934
122.1.1 Bit error ratio 4935
122.2 Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) service interface 4936
122.3 Delay and Skew 4936
122.3.1 Delay constraints 4936
122.3.2 Skew constraints 4937
122.4 PMD MDIO function mapping 4937
122.5 PMD functional specifications 4937
122.5.1 PMD block diagram 4937
122.5.2 PMD transmit function 4939
122.5.3 PMD receive function 4939
122.5.4 PMD global signal detect function 4939
122.5.5 PMD lane-by-lane signal detect function 4940
122.5.6 PMD reset function 4940
122.5.7 PMD global transmit disable function (optional) 4940
122.5.8 PMD lane-by-lane transmit disable function 4940
122.5.9 PMD fault function (optional) 4940
122.5.10 PMD transmit fault function (optional) 4940
122.5.11 PMD receive fault function (optional) 4941
122.6 Wavelength-division-multiplexed lane assignments 4941

122.7 PMD to MDI optical specifications for 200GBASE-FR4, 200GBASE-LR4, 200GBASE-ER4, 400GBASE-FR8, 400GBASE-LR8, and 400GBASE-ER8 4942
122.7.1 200GBASE-FR4, 200GBASE-LR4, 200GBASE-ER4, 400GBASE-FR8, 400GBASE-LR8, and 400GBASE-ER8 transmitter optical specifications 4943
122.7.2 200GBASE-FR4, 200GBASE-LR4, 200GBASE-ER4, 400GBASE-FR8, 400GBASE-LR8, and 400GBASE-ER8 receive optical specifications 4946
122.7.3 200GBASE-FR4, 200GBASE-LR4, 200GBASE-ER4, 400GBASE-FR8, 400GBASE-LR8, and 400GBASE-ER8 illustrative link power budgets 4948
122.8 Definition of optical parameters and measurement methods 4948
122.8.1 Test patterns for optical parameters 4948
122.8.2 Wavelength and side mode suppression ratio (SMSR) 4949
122.8.3 Average optical power 4949
122.8.4 Outer Optical Modulation Amplitude (OMAouter) 4950
122.8.5 Transmitter and dispersion eye closure for PAM4 (TDECQ) 4950
122.8.6 Extinction ratio 4952
122.8.7 Transmitter transition time 4953
122.8.8 Relative intensity noise (RIN17.1OMA, RIN15.6OMA, and RIN15OMA) 4953
122.8.9 Receiver sensitivity 4953
122.8.10 Stressed receiver sensitivity 4955
122.9 Safety, installation, environment, and labeling 4957
122.9.1 General safety 4957
122.9.2 Laser safety 4957
122.9.3 Installation 4958
122.9.4 Environment 4958
122.9.5 Electromagnetic emission 4958
122.9.6 Temperature, humidity, and handling 4958
122.9.7 PMD labeling requirements 4958
122.10 Fiber optic cabling model 4958
122.11 Characteristics of the fiber optic cabling (channel) 4959
122.11.1Optical fiber cable 4959
122.11.2Optical fiber connection 4959
122.11.3Medium Dependent Interface (MDI) requirements 4961
122.12 Requirements for interoperation between 200GBASE-ER4 and 200GBASE-LR4 4961
122.13 Requirements for interoperation between 400GBASE-ER8 and 400GBASE-FR8 4961
122.14 Requirements for interoperation between 400GBASE-ER8 and 400GBASE-LR8 4962
122.15 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 122, Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and medium, type 200GBASE-FR4, 200GBASE-LR4, 200GBASE-ER4, 400GBASE-FR8, 400GBASE-LR8, and 400GBASE-ER8 4963
122.15.1 Introduction 4963
122.15.2 Identification 4963
122.15.3 Major capabilities/options 4964
122.15.4 PICS proforma tables for Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and medium, type 200GBASE-FR4, 200GBASE-LR4, 200GBASE-ER4, 400GBASE-FR8, 400GBASE-LR8, and 400GBASE-ER8 4965

123. Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and medium, type 400GBASE-SR16 4969

123.1 Overview 4969
123.1.1 Bit error ratio 4970
123.2 Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) service interface 4970
123.3 Delay and Skew 4971
123.3.1 Delay constraints 4971
123.3.2 Skew constraints 4971
123.4 PMD MDIO function mapping 4972

123.5 PMD functional specifications ... 4972
123.5.1 PMD block diagram ... 4972
123.5.2 PMD transmit function ... 4973
123.5.3 PMD receive function ... 4973
123.5.4 PMD global signal detect function ... 4974
123.5.5 PMD lane-by-lane signal detect function ... 4974
123.5.6 PMD reset function ... 4974
123.5.7 PMD global transmit disable function (optional) ... 4975
123.5.8 PMD lane-by-lane transmit disable function (optional) ... 4975
123.5.9 PMD fault function (optional) ... 4975
123.5.10 PMD transmit fault function (optional) ... 4975
123.5.11 PMD receive fault function (optional) ... 4975
123.6 Lane assignments ... 4975
123.7 PMD to MDI optical specifications for 400GBASE-SR16 ... 4976
123.7.1 400GBASE-SR16 transmitter optical specifications ... 4976
123.7.2 400GBASE-SR16 receive optical specifications ... 4976
123.7.3 400GBASE-SR16 illustrative link power budget ... 4976
123.8 Definition of optical parameters and measurement methods ... 4976
123.8.1 Test patterns for optical parameters ... 4976
123.8.2 Center wavelength and spectral width ... 4977
123.8.3 Average optical power ... 4977
123.8.4 Optical Modulation Amplitude (OMA) ... 4977
123.8.5 Transmitter and dispersion eye closure (TDEC) ... 4977
123.8.6 Extinction ratio ... 4977
123.8.7 Transmitter optical waveform (transmit eye) ... 4977
123.8.8 Stressed receiver sensitivity ... 4977
123.9 Safety, installation, environment, and labeling ... 4978
123.9.1 General safety ... 4978
123.9.2 Laser safety ... 4978
123.9.3 Installation ... 4978
123.9.4 Environment ... 4978
123.9.5 Electromagnetic emission ... 4978
123.9.6 Temperature, humidity, and handling ... 4978
123.9.7 PMD labeling requirements ... 4979
123.10 Fiber optic cabling model ... 4979
123.11 Characteristics of the fiber optic cabling (channel) ... 4979
123.11.1 Optical fiber cable ... 4980
123.11.2 Optical fiber connection ... 4980
123.11.3 Medium Dependent Interface (MDI) ... 4980
123.12 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 123, Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and medium, type 400GBASE-SR16 ... 4982
123.12.1 Introduction ... 4982
123.12.2 Identification ... 4982
123.12.3 Major capabilities/options ... 4983
123.12.4 PICS proforma tables for Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and medium, type 400GBASE-SR16 ... 4983

124. Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and medium, type 400GBASE-DR4 ... 4987

124.1 Overview ... 4987
124.1.1 Bit error ratio ... 4987
124.2 Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) service interface ... 4988
124.3 Delay and Skew ... 4989
124.3.1 Delay constraints ... 4989

124.3.2 Skew constraints 4989
124.4 PMD MDIO function mapping 4989
124.5 PMD functional specifications 4990
124.5.1 PMD block diagram 4990
124.5.2 PMD transmit function 4991
124.5.3 PMD receive function 4991
124.5.4 PMD global signal detect function 4991
124.5.5 PMD lane-by-lane signal detect function 4992
124.5.6 PMD reset function 4992
124.5.7 PMD global transmit disable function (optional) 4992
124.5.8 PMD lane-by-lane transmit disable function (optional) 4993
124.5.9 PMD fault function (optional) 4993
124.5.10 PMD transmit fault function (optional) 4993
124.5.11 PMD receive fault function (optional) 4993
124.6 Lane assignments 4993
124.7 PMD to MDI optical specifications for 400GBASE-DR4 4993
124.7.1 400GBASE-DR4 transmitter optical specifications 4994
124.7.2 400GBASE-DR4 receive optical specifications 4994
124.7.3 400GBASE-DR4 illustrative link power budget 4995
124.8 Definition of optical parameters and measurement methods 4996
124.8.1 Test patterns for optical parameters 4996
124.8.2 Wavelength and side mode suppression ratio (SMSR) 4997
124.8.3 Average optical power 4997
124.8.4 Outer Optical Modulation Amplitude (OMAouter) 4997
124.8.5 Transmitter and dispersion eye closure for PAM4 (TDECQ) 4997
124.8.6 Extinction ratio 4997
124.8.7 Transmitter transition time 4998
124.8.8 Relative intensity noise (RIN21.4OMA) 4998
124.8.9 Receiver sensitivity 4998
124.8.10Stressed receiver sensitivity 4999
124.9 Safety, installation, environment, and labeling 4999
124.9.1 General safety 4999
124.9.2 Laser safety 5000
124.9.3 Installation 5000
124.9.4 Environment 5000
124.9.5 Electromagnetic emission 5001
124.9.6 Temperature, humidity, and handling 5001
124.9.7 PMD labeling requirements 5001
124.10 Fiber optic cabling model 5001
124.11 Characteristics of the fiber optic cabling (channel) 5001
124.11.1 Optical fiber cable 5001
124.11.2 Optical fiber connection 5002
124.11.3 Medium Dependent Interface (MDI) 5003
124.12 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 124, Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and medium, type 400GBASE-DR4 5005
124.12.1 Introduction 5005
124.12.2 Identification 5005
124.12.3 Major capabilities/options 5006
124.12.4 PICS proforma tables for Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and medium, type 400GBASE-DR4 5006

125. Introduction to 2.5 Gb/s and 5 Gb/s networks 5009

125.1 Overview 5009

125.1.1 Scope ... 5009
125.1.2 Relationship of 2.5 Gigabit and 5 Gigabit Ethernet to the ISO OSI reference model ... 5009
125.1.3 Nomenclature ... 5009
125.1.4 Physical Layer signaling systems ... 5011
125.2 Summary of 2.5 Gigabit and 5 Gigabit Ethernet sublayers ... 5012
125.2.1 Reconciliation Sublayer (RS) and Media Independent Interface ... 5012
125.2.2 Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS) ... 5012
125.2.3 Physical Medium Attachment sublayer (PMA) ... 5013
125.2.4 Auto-Negotiation ... 5013
125.2.5 Management interface (MDIO/MDC) ... 5013
125.2.6 Management ... 5013
125.3 Delay Constraints ... 5014

126. Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS), Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) sublayer, and baseband medium, types 2.5GBASE-T and 5GBASE-T ... 5015

126.1 Overview ... 5015
126.1.1 Nomenclature ... 5015
126.1.2 Relationship of 2.5GBASE-T and 5GBASE-T to other standards ... 5015
126.1.3 Operation of 2.5GBASE-T and 5GBASE-T ... 5016
126.1.4 Signaling ... 5022
126.1.5 Interfaces ... 5022
126.1.6 Conventions in this clause ... 5023
126.2 2.5GBASE-T and 5GBASE-T service primitives and interfaces ... 5023
126.2.1 Technology Dependent Interface ... 5023
126.2.2 PMA service interface ... 5024
126.3 Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS) ... 5032
126.3.1 PCS service interface (XGMII) ... 5032
126.3.2 PCS functions ... 5032
126.3.3 Test-pattern generators ... 5047
126.3.4 PMA training side-stream scrambler polynomials ... 5047
126.3.5 LPI signaling ... 5049
126.3.6 Detailed functions and state diagrams ... 5051
126.3.7 PCS management ... 5057
126.4 Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) sublayer ... 5065
126.4.1 PMA functional specifications ... 5065
126.4.2 PMA functions ... 5066
126.4.3 MDI ... 5079
126.4.4 Automatic MDI/MDI-X configuration ... 5081
126.4.5 State variables ... 5082
126.4.6 State diagrams ... 5087
126.5 PMA electrical specifications ... 5092
126.5.1 Electrical isolation ... 5092
126.5.2 Test modes ... 5092
126.5.3 Transmitter electrical specifications ... 5096
126.5.4 Receiver electrical specifications ... 5099
126.6 Management interfaces ... 5101
126.6.1 Support for Auto-Negotiation ... 5101
126.6.2 MASTER-SLAVE configuration resolution ... 5104
126.7 Link segment characteristics ... 5106
126.7.1 Cabling system characteristics ... 5107
126.7.2 Link segment transmission parameters ... 5107
126.7.3 Coupling parameters between link segments ... 5112
126.8 MDI specification ... 5118

126.8.1 MDI connectors ... 5118
126.8.2 MDI electrical specifications ... 5119
126.9 Environmental specifications ... 5120
126.9.1 General safety ... 5120
126.9.2 Network safety ... 5121
126.9.3 Installation and maintenance guidelines ... 5121
126.9.4 Telephone voltages ... 5121
126.9.5 Electromagnetic compatibility ... 5121
126.9.6 Temperature and humidity ... 5122
126.10 PHY labeling ... 5122
126.11 Delay constraints ... 5122
126.12 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 126—Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS), Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) sublayer, and baseband medium, types 2.5GBASE-T and 5GBASE-T ... 5123
126.12.1 Identification ... 5123
126.12.2 Major capabilities/options ... 5124
126.12.3 Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS) ... 5124
126.12.4 Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) ... 5127
126.12.5 PMA Electrical Specifications ... 5129
126.12.6 PMA Management Interface ... 5130
126.12.7 Characteristics of the link segment ... 5131
126.12.8 MDI requirements ... 5132
126.12.9 General safety and environmental requirements ... 5133
126.12.10 Timing requirements ... 5133

127. Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS) and Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) sublayer for 2.5 Gb/s 8B/10B 2.5GBASE-X ... 5134

127.1 Overview ... 5134
127.1.1 Scope ... 5134
127.1.2 Relationship of 2.5GBASE-X to other standards ... 5134
127.1.3 Summary of 2.5GBASE-X sublayers ... 5134
127.1.4 Inter-sublayer interfaces ... 5135
127.1.5 Functional block diagram ... 5136
127.2 Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS) ... 5136
127.2.1 PCS Interface (XGMII) ... 5136
127.2.2 Functions within the PCS ... 5137
127.2.3 PCS used with 2.5GBASE-KX PMD ... 5137
127.2.4 Use of code-groups ... 5138
127.2.5 XGMII to 2.5GPII mapping ... 5138
127.2.6 8B/10B transmission code ... 5142
127.2.7 Detailed functions and state diagrams ... 5146
127.3 Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) sublayer ... 5167
127.3.1 Service Interface ... 5167
127.3.2 Functions within the PMA ... 5168
127.3.3 Loopback mode ... 5169
127.3.4 Test functions ... 5169
127.4 Compatibility considerations ... 5170
127.5 Delay constraints ... 5170
127.6 Environmental specifications ... 5170
127.7 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 127, Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS) and Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) sublayer for 2.5 Gb/s 8B/10B 2.5GBASE-X ... 5171
127.7.1 Introduction ... 5171

127.7.2 Identification 5171
127.7.3 Major capabilities/options 5172
127.7.4 PICS proforma tables for the PCS and PMA sublayer, type 2.5GBASE-X 5172

128. Physical Medium Dependent sublayer and baseband medium, type 2.5GBASE-KX 5175

128.1 Overview 5175
128.2 Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) service interface 5175
128.2.1 PMD_UNITDATA.request 5176
128.2.2 PMD_UNITDATA.indication 5176
128.2.3 PMD_SIGNAL.indication 5176
128.2.4 PMD_RXQUIET.request 5177
128.2.5 PMD_TXQUIET.request 5177
128.3 PCS requirements for Auto-Negotiation (AN) service interface 5178
128.4 Delay constraints 5178
128.5 PMD MDIO function mapping 5178
128.6 PMD functional specifications 5179
128.6.1 Link block diagram 5179
128.6.2 PMD transmit function 5180
128.6.3 PMD receive function 5180
128.6.4 PMD signal detect function 5180
128.6.5 PMD transmit disable function 5180
128.6.6 Loopback mode 5180
128.6.7 PMD fault function 5181
128.6.8 PMD transmit fault function 5181
128.6.9 PMD receive fault function 5181
128.6.10 PMD LPI function 5181
128.7 2.5GBASE-KX electrical characteristics 5182
128.7.1 Transmitter characteristics 5182
128.7.2 Receiver characteristics 5186
128.8 Interconnect characteristics 5187
128.9 Environmental specifications 5187
128.9.1 General safety 5187
128.9.2 Network safety 5187
128.9.3 Installation and maintenance guidelines 5187
128.9.4 Electromagnetic compatibility 5187
128.9.5 Temperature and humidity 5187
128.10 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 128, Physical Medium Dependent sublayer and baseband medium, type 2.5GBASE-KX 5188
128.10.1 Introduction 5188
128.10.2 Identification 5188
128.10.3 Major capabilities/options 5189
128.10.4 PICS proforma tables for Clause 128, Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and baseband medium, type 2.5GBASE-KX. 5189

129. Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS) and Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) sublayer for 5 Gb/s 64B/66B, type 5GBASE-R 5193

129.1 Overview 5193
129.1.1 Scope 5193
129.1.2 Relationship of 5GBASE-R to other standards 5193
129.1.3 Summary of 5GBASE-R sublayers 5194
129.1.4 Inter-sublayer interfaces 5195
129.2 Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS) 5195

129.2.1 Functions within the PCS ... 5195
129.2.2 Notation conventions ... 5196
129.2.3 Transmission order ... 5196
129.2.4 Low Power Idle ... 5197
129.2.5 PCS used with 5GBASE-KR PMD ... 5198
129.3 Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) sublayer ... 5198
129.3.1 Service Interface ... 5198
129.3.2 Functions within the PMA ... 5198
129.3.3 PMA loopback mode (optional) ... 5199
129.4 Compatibility considerations ... 5199
129.5 Delay constraints ... 5199
129.6 Environmental specifications ... 5199
129.7 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 129, Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS) and Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) sublayer for 5 Gb/s 64B/66B, type 5GBASE-R ... 5200
129.7.1 Introduction ... 5200
129.7.2 Identification ... 5200
129.7.3 Major capabilities/options ... 5201
129.7.4 PICS Proforma Tables for PCS, type 5GBASE-R ... 5201
129.7.5 Test-pattern modes ... 5202
129.7.6 Management ... 5202

130. Physical Medium Dependent sublayer and baseband medium, type 5GBASE-KR ... 5205

130.1 Overview ... 5205
130.2 Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) service interface ... 5205
130.2.1 PMD_UNITDATA.request ... 5206
130.2.2 PMD_UNITDATA.indication ... 5206
130.2.3 PMD_SIGNAL.indication ... 5206
130.2.4 PMD_RX_MODE.request ... 5207
130.2.5 PMD_TX_MODE.request ... 5207
130.3 PCS requirements for Auto-Negotiation (AN) service interface ... 5208
130.4 Delay constraints ... 5208
130.5 PMD MDIO function mapping ... 5208
130.6 PMD functional specifications ... 5209
130.6.1 Link block diagram ... 5209
130.6.2 PMD transmit function ... 5209
130.6.3 PMD receive function ... 5209
130.6.4 PMD signal detect function ... 5209
130.6.5 PMD transmit disable function ... 5210
130.6.6 Loopback mode ... 5210
130.6.7 PMD_fault function ... 5211
130.6.8 PMD transmit fault function ... 5211
130.6.9 PMD receive fault function ... 5211
130.6.10 PMD LPI function ... 5211
130.7 5GBASE-KR electrical characteristics ... 5212
130.7.1 Transmitter characteristics ... 5212
130.7.2 Receiver characteristics ... 5217
130.8 Interconnect characteristics ... 5219
130.9 Environmental specifications ... 5219
130.9.1 General safety ... 5219
130.9.2 Network safety ... 5219
130.9.3 Installation and maintenance guidelines ... 5219
130.9.4 Electromagnetic compatibility ... 5219

130.9.5 Temperature and humidity 5219
130.10 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 130, Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and baseband medium, type 5GBASE-KR 5220
130.10.1 Introduction 5220
130.10.2 Identification 5220
130.10.3 Major capabilities/options 5221
130.10.4 PICS proforma tables for Clause 130, Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and baseband medium, type 5GBASE-KR 5221

131. Introduction to 50 Gb/s networks 5225

131.1 Overview 5225
131.1.1 Scope 5225
131.1.2 Relationship of 50 Gigabit Ethernet to the ISO OSI reference model 5225
131.1.3 Nomenclature 5226
131.1.4 Physical Layer signaling systems 5227
131.2 Summary of 50 Gigabit Ethernet sublayers 5228
131.2.1 Reconciliation Sublayer (RS) and Media Independent Interface (50GMII) 5228
131.2.2 Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS) 5228
131.2.3 Forward error correction (FEC) sublayer 5228
131.2.4 Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) sublayer 5228
131.2.5 Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer 5228
131.2.6 Management interface (MDIO/MDC) 5228
131.2.7 Management 5229
131.3 Service interface specification method and notation 5229
131.3.1 Inter-sublayer service interface 5229
131.3.2 Instances of the inter-sublayer service interface 5229
131.3.3 Semantics of inter-sublayer service interface primitives 5229
131.4 Delay constraints 5231
131.5 Skew constraints 5232
131.6 State diagrams 5234
131.7 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma 5234

132. Reconciliation Sublayer (RS) and Media Independent Interface (50GMII) for 50 Gb/s operation . 5235

132.1 Overview 5235
132.1.1 Summary of major concepts 5235
132.1.2 Application 5235
132.1.3 Rate of operation 5235
132.1.4 Delay constraints 5236
132.1.5 Allocation of functions 5237
132.1.6 50GMII structure 5237
132.1.7 Mapping of 50GMII signals to PLS service primitives 5237
132.2 50GMII data stream 5237
132.3 50GMII functional specifications 5237
132.4 LPI assertion and detection 5237
132.5 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 132, Reconciliation Sublayer (RS) and Media Independent Interface (50GMII) for 50 Gb/s operation 5238
132.5.1 Introduction 5238
132.5.2 Identification 5238
132.5.3 PICS proforma tables for Reconciliation Sublayer (RS) and Media Independent Interface (50GMII) for 50 Gb/s operation 5239

133. Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS) for 64B/66B, type 50GBASE-R 5240

133.1 Overview 5240
133.1.1 Scope 5240
133.1.2 Relationship of 50GBASE-R to other standards 5240
133.1.3 Summary of 50GBASE-R sublayers 5240
133.1.4 Inter-sublayer interfaces 5240
133.1.5 Functional block diagram 5242
133.2 Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS) 5243
133.2.1 Functions within the PCS 5243
133.2.2 Alignment marker insertion 5243
133.2.3 PCS lane deskew 5244
133.2.4 Detailed functions and state diagrams 5244
133.3 Delay constraints 5244
133.4 Auto-Negotiation 5244
133.5 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 133, Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS) for 64B/66B, type 50GBASE-R 5245
133.5.1 Introduction 5245
133.5.2 Identification 5245
133.5.3 Major capabilities/options 5246
133.5.4 PICS proforma tables for Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS) for 64B/66B, type 50GBASE-R 5246

134. Reed-Solomon forward error correction (RS-FEC) sublayer for 50GBASE-R PHYs 5250

134.1 Overview 5250
134.1.1 Scope 5250
134.1.2 Position of RS-FEC in the 50GBASE-R sublayers 5250
134.2 FEC service interface 5250
134.3 PMA compatibility 5251
134.4 Delay constraints 5252
134.5 Functions within the RS-FEC sublayer 5252
134.5.1 Functional block diagram 5252
134.5.2 Transmit function 5252
134.5.3 Receive function 5257
134.5.4 Detailed functions and state diagrams 5259
134.6 RS-FEC MDIO function mapping 5262
134.6.1 FEC_bypass_indication_enable 5263
134.6.2 FEC_degraded_SER_enable 5263
134.6.3 FEC_degraded_SER_activate_threshold 5263
134.6.4 FEC_degraded_SER_deactivate_threshold 5263
134.6.5 FEC_degraded_SER_interval 5263
134.6.6 FEC_bypass_indication_ability 5263
134.6.7 hi_ser 5264
134.6.8 FEC_degraded_SER_ability 5264
134.6.9 FEC_degraded_SER 5264
134.6.10 fec_optional_states 5264
134.6.11 amps_lock<*x*> 5264
134.6.12 fec_align_status 5264
134.6.13 FEC_corrected_cw_counter 5264
134.6.14 FEC_uncorrected_cw_counter 5264
134.6.15 FEC_lane_mapping<*x*> 5265
134.6.16 FEC_symbol_error_counter_*i* *5265*
134.6.17 align_status 5265

134.6.18 BIP_error_counter_*i* *5265*
134.6.19 lane_mapping<*x*> 5265
134.6.20 block_lock<*x*> 5265
134.6.21 am_lock<*x*> 5265
134.7 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 134, Reed-Solomon forward error correction (RS-FEC) sublayer for 50GBASE-R PHYs 5266
134.7.1 Introduction 5266
134.7.2 Identification 5266
134.7.3 Major capabilities/options 5267
134.7.4 PICS proforma tables for Reed-Solomon forward error correction (RS-FEC) sublayer for 50GBASE-R PHYs 5267

135. Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) sublayer, type 50GBASE-R and 100GBASE-P 5270

135.1 Overview 5270
135.1.1 Scope 5270
135.1.2 Position of the PMA in the 50GBASE-R and 100GBASE-P sublayers 5270
135.1.3 Summary of functions 5270
135.1.4 PMA sublayer positioning 5271
135.2 PMA interfaces 5273
135.3 PMA service interface 5274
135.4 Service interface below PMA 5275
135.5 Functions within the PMA 5276
135.5.1 Per input-lane clock and data recovery 5277
135.5.2 Bit-level multiplexing 5278
135.5.3 Skew and Skew Variation 5278
135.5.4 Delay constraints 5281
135.5.5 Clocking architecture 5281
135.5.6 Signal drivers 5281
135.5.7 PAM4 encoding 5282
135.5.8 PMA local loopback mode (optional) 5283
135.5.9 PMA remote loopback mode (optional) 5284
135.5.10 PMA test patterns (optional) 5284
135.6 PMA MDIO function mapping 5285
135.7 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 135, Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) sublayer, type 50GBASE-R and 100GBASE-P 5289
135.7.1 Introduction 5289
135.7.2 Identification 5289
135.7.3 Major capabilities/options 5290
135.7.4 PICS proforma tables for Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) sublayer, type 50GBASE-R and 100GBASE-P 5291
135.7.7 Encoding 5295

136. Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and baseband medium, type 50GBASE-CR, 100GBASE-CR2, and 200GBASE-CR4 5296

136.1 Overview 5296
136.2 Conventions 5298
136.3 PMD service interfaces 5298
136.4 PCS requirements for Auto-Negotiation (AN) service interface 5300
136.5 Delay constraints 5300
136.6 Skew constraints 5301
136.6.1 Skew Constraints for 50GBASE-CR 5301
136.6.2 Skew Constraints for 100GBASE-CR2 and 200GBASE-CR4 5301

136.7 PMD MDIO function mapping ... 5301
136.8 PMD functional specifications ... 5305
136.8.1 Link block diagram ... 5305
136.8.2 PMD transmit function ... 5306
136.8.3 PMD receive function ... 5307
136.8.4 PMD global signal detect function ... 5307
136.8.5 PMD lane-by-lane signal detect function ... 5307
136.8.6 PMD global transmit disable function (optional) ... 5307
136.8.7 PMD lane-by-lane transmit disable function (optional) ... 5308
136.8.8 PMD fault function ... 5308
136.8.9 PMD transmit fault function (optional) ... 5308
136.8.10 PMD receive fault function (optional) ... 5308
136.8.11 PMD control function ... 5308
136.9 PMD electrical characteristics ... 5325
136.9.1 AC-coupling ... 5325
136.9.2 Signal paths ... 5325
136.9.3 Transmitter characteristics ... 5325
136.9.4 Receiver characteristics ... 5330
136.10 Channel characteristics ... 5334
136.11 Cable assembly characteristics ... 5334
136.11.1 Characteristic impedance and reference impedance ... 5335
136.11.2 Cable assembly insertion loss ... 5335
136.11.3 Cable assembly ERL ... 5335
136.11.4 Differential to common-mode return loss ... 5336
136.11.5 Differential to common-mode conversion loss ... 5336
136.11.6 Common-mode to common-mode return loss ... 5336
136.11.7 Cable assembly Channel Operating Margin ... 5336
136.12 MDI specifications ... 5340
136.13 Environmental specifications ... 5340
136.14 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 136, Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and baseband medium, type 50GBASE-CR, 100GBASE-CR2, and 200GBASE-CR4 ... 5341
136.14.1 Introduction ... 5341
136.14.2 Identification ... 5341
136.14.3 Major capabilities/options ... 5342
136.14.4 PICS proforma tables for Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and baseband medium, type 50GBASE-CR, 100GBASE-CR2, and 200GBASE-CR4 ... 5343

137. Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and baseband medium, type 50GBASE-KR, 100GBASE-KR2, and 200GBASE-KR4 ... 5347

137.1 Overview ... 5347
137.2 Conventions ... 5350
137.3 PMD service interfaces ... 5350
137.4 PCS requirements for Auto-Negotiation (AN) service interface ... 5350
137.5 Delay constraints ... 5350
137.6 Skew constraints ... 5351
137.6.1 Skew Constraints for 50GBASE-KR ... 5351
137.6.2 Skew Constraints for 100GBASE-KR2 and 200GBASE-KR4 ... 5351
137.7 PMD MDIO function mapping ... 5351
137.8 PMD functional specifications ... 5352
137.8.1 Link block diagram ... 5352
137.8.2 PMD transmit function ... 5352
137.8.3 PMD receive function ... 5352

137.8.4 PMD global signal detect function ... 5352
137.8.5 PMD lane-by-lane signal detect function ... 5352
137.8.6 PMD global transmit disable function (optional) ... 5352
137.8.7 PMD lane-by-lane transmit disable function (optional) ... 5352
137.8.8 PMD fault function ... 5353
137.8.9 PMD transmit fault function (optional) ... 5353
137.8.10 PMD receive fault function (optional) ... 5353
137.8.11 PMD control function ... 5353
137.9 Electrical characteristics ... 5353
137.9.1 MDI ... 5353
137.9.2 Transmitter characteristics ... 5353
137.9.3 Receiver characteristics ... 5354
137.10 Channel characteristics ... 5354
137.10.1 Channel insertion loss ... 5356
137.10.2 Channel ERL ... 5356
137.11 Environmental specifications ... 5356
137.12 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 137, Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and baseband medium, type 50GBASE-KR, 100GBASE-KR2, and 200GBASE-KR4 ... 5358
137.12.1 Introduction ... 5358
137.12.2 Identification ... 5358
137.12.3 Major capabilities/options ... 5359
137.12.4 PICS proforma tables for Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and baseband medium, type 50GBASE-KR, 100GBASE-KR2, and 200GBASE-KR4 ... 5360

138. Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and medium, type 50GBASE-SR, 100GBASE-SR2, 200GBASE-SR4, 400GBASE-SR8 ... 5363

138.1 Overview ... 5363
138.1.1 Bit error ratio ... 5366
138.2 Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) service interface ... 5367
138.3 Delay and Skew ... 5368
138.3.1 Delay constraints ... 5368
138.3.2 Skew constraints ... 5368
138.4 PMD MDIO function mapping ... 5369
138.5 PMD functional specifications ... 5370
138.5.1 PMD block diagram ... 5370
138.5.2 PMD transmit function ... 5371
138.5.3 PMD receive function ... 5371
138.5.4 PMD global signal detect function ... 5371
138.5.5 PMD lane-by-lane signal detect function ... 5372
138.5.6 PMD reset function ... 5372
138.5.7 PMD global transmit disable function (optional) ... 5372
138.5.8 PMD lane-by-lane transmit disable function (optional) ... 5372
138.5.9 PMD fault function (optional) ... 5372
138.5.10 PMD transmit fault function (optional) ... 5373
138.5.11 PMD receive fault function (optional) ... 5373
138.6 Lane assignments ... 5373
138.7 PMD to MDI optical specifications for 50GBASE-SR, 100GBASE-SR2, 200GBASE-SR4, and 400GBASE-SR8 ... 5373
138.7.1 Transmitter optical specifications ... 5374
138.7.2 Receiver optical specifications ... 5374
138.7.3 Illustrative link power budget ... 5375
138.8 Definition of optical parameters and measurement methods ... 5376

138.8.1 Test patterns for optical parameters ... 5376
138.8.2 Center wavelength and spectral width ... 5377
138.8.3 Average optical power ... 5377
138.8.4 Outer Optical Modulation Amplitude (OMAouter) ... 5377
138.8.5 Transmitter and dispersion eye closure for PAM4 (TDECQ) ... 5377
138.8.6 Extinction ratio ... 5378
138.8.7 Transmitter transition time ... 5378
138.8.8 Relative intensity noise (RIN12OMA) ... 5378
138.8.9 Receiver sensitivity ... 5379
138.8.10 Stressed receiver sensitivity ... 5379
138.9 Safety, installation, environment, and labeling ... 5380
138.9.1 General safety ... 5380
138.9.2 Laser safety ... 5380
138.9.3 Installation ... 5381
138.9.4 Environment ... 5381
138.9.5 Electromagnetic emission ... 5381
138.9.6 Temperature, humidity, and handling ... 5381
138.9.7 PMD labeling requirements ... 5381
138.10 Fiber optic cabling model ... 5381
138.10.1 Fiber optic cabling model ... 5382
138.10.2 Characteristics of the fiber optic cabling (channel) ... 5383
138.10.3 Medium Dependent Interface (MDI) ... 5384
138.11 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 138, Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and medium, type 50GBASE-SR, 100GBASE-SR2, 200GBASE-SR4, 400GBASE-SR8 ... 5387
138.11.1 Introduction ... 5387
138.11.2 Identification ... 5387
138.11.3 Major capabilities/options ... 5388
138.11.4 PICS proforma tables for Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and medium, type 50GBASE-SR, 100GBASE-SR2, 200GBASE-SR4, 400GBASE-SR8 ... 5389

139. Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and medium, type 50GBASE-FR, 50GBASE-LR, and 50GBASE-ER ... 5393

139.1 Overview ... 5393
139.1.1 Bit error ratio ... 5394
139.2 Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) service interface ... 5394
139.3 Delay and Skew ... 5395
139.3.1 Delay constraints ... 5395
139.3.2 Skew constraints ... 5395
139.4 PMD MDIO function mapping ... 5396
139.5 PMD functional specifications ... 5396
139.5.1 PMD block diagram ... 5396
139.5.2 PMD transmit function ... 5397
139.5.3 PMD receive function ... 5397
139.5.4 PMD global signal detect function ... 5397
139.5.5 PMD reset function ... 5398
139.5.6 PMD global transmit disable function (optional) ... 5398
139.5.7 PMD fault function (optional) ... 5398
139.5.8 PMD transmit fault function (optional) ... 5398
139.5.9 PMD receive fault function (optional) ... 5398
139.6 PMD to MDI optical specifications for 50GBASE-FR, 50GBASE-LR, and 50GBASE-ER 5399
139.6.1 50GBASE-FR, 50GBASE-LR, and 50GBASE-ER transmitter optical specifications ... 5399
139.6.2 50GBASE-FR, 50GBASE-LR, and 50GBASE-ER receive optical specifications ... 5400

139.6.3 50GBASE-FR, 50GBASE-LR, and 50GBASE-ER illustrative link power budgets 5402
139.7 Definition of optical parameters and measurement methods 5402
139.7.1 Test patterns for optical parameters 5402
139.7.2 Wavelength and side-mode suppression ratio (SMSR) 5403
139.7.3 Average optical power 5403
139.7.4 Outer Optical Modulation Amplitude (OMAouter) 5403
139.7.5 Transmitter and dispersion eye closure for PAM4 (TDECQ) 5404
139.7.6 Extinction ratio 5406
139.7.7 Transmitter transition time 5406
139.7.8 Relative intensity noise ($RIN_{17.1}OMA$, $RIN_{15.6}OMA$, and $RIN_{15}OMA$) 5406
139.7.9 Receiver sensitivity 5407
139.7.10 Stressed receiver sensitivity 5407
139.8 Safety, installation, environment, and labeling 5409
139.8.1 General safety 5409
139.8.2 Laser safety 5410
139.8.3 Installation 5410
139.8.4 Environment 5410
139.8.5 Electromagnetic emission 5410
139.8.6 Temperature, humidity, and handling 5410
139.8.7 PMD labeling requirements 5410
139.9 Fiber optic cabling model 5411
139.10 Characteristics of the fiber optic cabling (channel) 5411
139.10.1 Optical fiber cable 5412
139.10.2 Optical fiber connection 5412
139.10.3 Medium Dependent Interface (MDI) requirements 5412
139.11 Requirements for interoperation between 50GBASE-ER and 50GBASE-FR 5413
139.12 Requirements for interoperation between 50GBASE-ER and 50GBASE-LR 5413
139.13 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 139, Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and medium, type 50GBASE-FR, 50GBASE-LR, and 50GBASE-ER 5414
139.13.1 Introduction 5414
139.13.2 Identification 5414
139.13.3 Major capabilities/options 5415
139.13.4 PICS proforma tables for Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and medium, type 50GBASE-FR, 50GBASE-LR, and 50GBASE-ER 5415

140. Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and medium, type 100GBASE-DR, 100GBASE-FR1, and 100GBASE-LR1 5419

140.1 Overview 5419
140.1.1 Bit error ratio 5420
140.2 Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) service interface 5420
140.3 Delay and Skew 5421
140.3.1 Delay constraints 5421
140.3.2 Skew constraints 5421
140.4 PMD MDIO function mapping 5422
140.5 PMD functional specifications 5422
140.5.1 PMD block diagram 5422
140.5.2 PMD transmit function 5423
140.5.3 PMD receive function 5423
140.5.4 PMD global signal detect function 5423
140.5.5 PMD reset function 5424
140.5.6 PMD global transmit disable function (optional) 5424
140.5.7 PMD fault function (optional) 5424

140.5.8 PMD transmit fault function (optional) ... 5424
140.5.9 PMD receive fault function (optional) ... 5424
140.6 PMD to MDI optical specifications for 100GBASE-DR, 100GBASE-FR1, and 100GBASE-LR1 ... 5425
140.6.1 100GBASE-DR, 100GBASE-FR1, and 100GBASE-LR1 transmitter optical specifications ... 5425
140.6.2 100GBASE-DR, 100GBASE-FR1, and 100GBASE-LR1 receive optical specifications ... 5427
140.6.3 100GBASE-DR, 100GBASE-FR1, and 100GBASE-LR1 illustrative link power budgets ... 5429
140.7 Definition of optical parameters and measurement methods ... 5431
140.7.1 Test patterns for optical parameters ... 5431
140.7.2 Wavelength and side-mode suppression ratio (SMSR) ... 5432
140.7.3 Average optical power ... 5432
140.7.4 Outer Optical Modulation Amplitude (OMAouter) ... 5432
140.7.5 Transmitter and dispersion eye closure for PAM4 (TDECQ) ... 5432
140.7.6 Transmitter eye closure for PAM4 (TECQ) ... 5434
140.7.7 Over/under-shoot ... 5434
140.7.8 Transmitter power excursion ... 5434
140.7.9 Extinction ratio ... 5435
140.7.10 Transmitter transition time ... 5435
140.7.11 Relative intensity noise (RINxOMA) ... 5435
140.7.12 Receiver sensitivity ... 5435
140.7.13 Stressed receiver sensitivity ... 5436
140.8 Safety, installation, environment, and labeling ... 5437
140.8.1 General safety ... 5437
140.8.2 Laser safety ... 5437
140.8.3 Installation ... 5437
140.8.4 Environment ... 5437
140.8.5 Electromagnetic emission ... 5437
140.8.6 Temperature, humidity, and handling ... 5438
140.8.7 PMD labeling requirements ... 5438
140.9 Fiber optic cabling model ... 5438
140.10 Characteristics of the fiber optic cabling (channel) ... 5439
140.10.1 Optical fiber cable ... 5439
140.10.2 Optical fiber connection ... 5440
140.10.3 Medium Dependent Interface (MDI) ... 5441
140.11 Interoperation between 100GBASE-DR, 100GBASE-FR1, and 100GBASE-LR1 ... 5441
140.11.1 Interoperation between 100GBASE-FR1 and 100GBASE-DR ... 5441
140.11.2 Interoperation between 100GBASE-LR1 and 100GBASE-DR ... 5441
140.11.3 Interoperation between 100GBASE-LR1 and 100GBASE-FR1 ... 5441
140.12 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 140, Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and medium, type 100GBASE-DR, 100GBASE-FR1, and 100GBASE-LR1, 100GBASE-FR1, and 100GBASE-LR1 ... 5443
140.12.1 Introduction ... 5443
140.12.2 Identification ... 5443
140.12.3 Major capabilities/options ... 5444
140.12.4 PICS proforma tables for Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and medium, type 100GBASE-DR, 100GBASE-FR1, and 100GBASE-LR1, 100GBASE-FR1, and 100GBASE-LR1 ... 5445

141. Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and medium for Nx25G-EPON passive optical networks ... 5449

141.1 Overview ... 5449
141.1.1 Terminology ... 5449
141.1.2 Positioning of the PMD sublayer within the IEEE 802.3 architecture ... 5449
141.1.3 PHY link types ... 5449
141.2 PMD nomenclature ... 5452
141.2.1 Introduction ... 5452
141.2.2 PMD rate classes ... 5452
141.2.3 PMD coexistence classes ... 5452
141.2.4 PMD transmission direction classes ... 5452
141.2.5 PMD power classes ... 5452
141.2.6 PMD naming ... 5453
141.2.7 Supported combinations of OLT and ONU PMDs ... 5453
141.3 PMD functional specifications ... 5455
141.3.1 PMD service interface ... 5455
141.3.2 PMD block diagram ... 5457
141.3.3 PMD transmit function ... 5458
141.3.4 PMD receive function ... 5458
141.3.5 PMD signal detect function ... 5458
141.4 Wavelength allocation ... 5459
141.5 PMD to MDI optical specifications for OLT PMDs ... 5460
141.5.1 Transmitter optical specifications ... 5460
141.5.2 Receiver optical specifications ... 5460
141.6 PMD to MDI optical specifications for ONU PMDs ... 5465
141.6.1 Transmitter optical specifications ... 5465
141.6.2 Receiver optical specifications ... 5468
141.7 Definitions of optical parameters and measurement methods ... 5470
141.7.1 Insertion loss ... 5470
141.7.2 Test patterns ... 5470
141.7.3 Wavelength and spectral width measurement ... 5470
141.7.4 Optical power measurements ... 5470
141.7.5 Extinction ratio measurements ... 5470
141.7.6 Optical Modulation Amplitude (OMA) test procedure ... 5470
141.7.7 Relative intensity noise optical modulation amplitude (RINxOMA) measuring procedure ... 5470
141.7.8 Transmit optical waveform (transmit eye) ... 5471
141.7.9 Transmitter and dispersion penalty (TDP) for 25G ... 5471
141.7.10 Receive sensitivity ... 5472
141.7.11 Stressed receiver conformance test ... 5472
141.7.12 Jitter measurements ... 5472
141.7.13 Laser on/off timing measurement ... 5472
141.7.14 Receiver settling timing measurement ... 5474
141.8 Environmental, safety, and labeling ... 5475
141.8.1 General safety ... 5475
141.8.2 Laser safety ... 5475
141.8.3 Installation ... 5475
141.8.4 Environment ... 5475
141.8.5 PMD labeling ... 5475
141.9 Characteristics of the fiber optic cabling ... 5476
141.9.1 Fiber optic cabling model ... 5476
141.9.2 Optical fiber and cable ... 5476
141.9.3 Optical fiber connection ... 5476
141.9.4 Medium Dependent Interface (MDI) ... 5477

141.10 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 141, Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and medium for Nx25G-EPON passive optical networks ... 5478
141.10.1 Introduction ... 5478
141.10.2 Identification ... 5478
141.10.3 Major capabilities/options ... 5479
141.10.4 PICS proforma tables for Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and medium for passive optical networks, type 25/10GBASE-PQ, 25GBASE-PQ, 50/10GBASE-PQ, 50/25GBASE-PQ, and 50GBASE-PQ ... 5482

142. Physical Coding Sublayer and Physical Media Attachment for Nx25G-EPON ... 5495

142.1 Overview ... 5495
142.1.1 Conventions ... 5495
142.1.2 Delay constraints ... 5500
142.1.3 Burst transmission ... 5500
142.2 PCS transmit data path ... 5502
142.2.1 64B/66B line encoder ... 5502
142.2.2 Scrambler ... 5504
142.2.3 64B/66B to 256B/257B transcoder ... 5504
142.2.4 FEC encoder ... 5504
142.2.5 Transmit data path state diagrams ... 5514
142.3 PCS receive data path ... 5521
142.3.1 FEC decoder ... 5521
142.3.2 256B/257B to 64B/66B transcoder ... 5522
142.3.3 Descrambler ... 5522
142.3.4 64B/66B decoder ... 5523
142.3.5 Receive data path state diagrams ... 5524
142.4 Nx25G-EPON PMA ... 5530
142.4.1 Service Interface ... 5530
142.4.2 Differential encoder ... 5532
142.4.3 Differential decoder ... 5533
142.4.4 PMA transmit clock ... 5533
142.4.5 TCDR measurement ... 5533
142.5 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 142, Physical Coding Sublayer and Physical Media Attachment for Nx25G-EPON ... 5535
142.5.1 Introduction ... 5535
142.5.2 Identification ... 5535
142.5.3 PCS capabilities/options ... 5536
142.5.4 PCS processes ... 5536
142.5.5 PMA processes ... 5537

143. Multi-Channel Reconciliation Sublayer ... 5538

143.1 Overview ... 5538
143.2 Summary of major concepts ... 5538
143.2.1 Concept of a logical link and LLID ... 5539
143.2.2 Concept of an MCRS channel ... 5539
143.2.3 Binding of multiple MACs to multiple xMII instances ... 5539
143.2.4 Transmission and reception over multiple MCRS channels ... 5540
143.2.5 Dynamic channel bonding ... 5542
143.2.6 MDIO addressing model for multi-channel architecture ... 5546
143.3 MCRS functional specifications ... 5548
143.3.1 MCRS interfaces ... 5548

143.3.2 Envelope header format 5551
143.3.3 Transmit functional specifications 5553
143.3.4 Receive functional specifications 5561
143.4 Nx25G-EPON MCRS requirements 5566
143.4.1 Nx25G-EPON architecture 5566
143.4.2 MCRS time synchronization 5569
143.4.3 Delay variability constraints 5570
143.4.4 Asymmetric rate operation 5570
143.5 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 143, Multi-Channel Reconciliation Sublayer 5573
143.5.1 Introduction 5573
143.5.2 Identification 5573
143.5.3 Generic MCRS 5574
143.5.4 MCRS in Nx25G-EPON 5574

144. Multipoint MAC Control for Nx25G-EPON 5576

144.1 Overview 5576
144.1.1 Principles of point-to-multipoint operation 5576
144.1.2 Position of Multipoint MAC Control (MPMC) within the IEEE 802.3 hierarchy 5579
144.1.3 Functional block diagram 5579
144.1.4 Service interfaces 5579
144.1.5 Conventions 5582
144.2 Protocol-independent operation 5582
144.2.1 Control Parser and Control Multiplexer 5583
144.3 Multipoint Control Protocol (MPCP) 5586
144.3.1 Principles of Multipoint Control Protocol (MPCP) 5586
144.3.2 MPCP block diagram 5590
144.3.3 Delay variability requirements 5592
144.3.4 Logical link identifier (LLID) types 5592
144.3.5 Allocation of LLID values 5593
144.3.6 MPCPDU structure and encoding 5594
144.3.7 Discovery process 5608
144.3.8 Granting process 5618
144.3.9 Discovery process in dual-rate systems 5623
144.4 Channel Control Protocol (CCP) 5625
144.4.1 CCP block diagram 5625
144.4.2 Principles of Channel Control Protocol 5626
144.4.3 CCPDU structure and encoding 5628
144.4.4 Channel Control operation 5632
144.5 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 144, Multipoint MAC Control for Nx25G-EPON 5637
144.5.1 Introduction 5637
144.5.2 Identification 5637
144.5.3 Major capabilities/options 5638
144.5.4 PICS proforma tables for Multipoint MAC Control 5638

145. Power over Ethernet 5643

145.1 Overview 5643
145.1.1 Compatibility considerations 5644
145.1.2 Relationship of Power over Ethernet to the IEEE 802.3 Architecture 5644
145.1.3 System parameters 5645
145.1.4 Cabling requirements 5646

145.2 Power sourcing equipment (PSE) 5647
145.2.1 PSE Type descriptions 5647
145.2.2 PSE location 5648
145.2.3 Midspan PSE variants 5648
145.2.4 PSE PI 5655
145.2.5 PSE state diagrams 5656
145.2.6 PSE detection of PDs 5692
145.2.7 Connection check 5695
145.2.8 PSE classification of PDs and mutual identification 5695
145.2.9 4PID requirements 5703
145.2.10 Power supply output 5703
145.2.11 Power supply allocation 5718
145.2.12 PSE Maintain Power Signature (MPS) requirements 5718
145.3 Powered devices (PDs) 5719
145.3.1 PD Type descriptions 5720
145.3.2 PD PI 5720
145.3.3 PD state diagrams 5722
145.3.4 PD valid and non-valid detection signatures 5735
145.3.5 PD signature configurations 5737
145.3.6 PD classification 5738
145.3.7 PSE Type identification 5742
145.3.8 PD power 5742
145.3.9 PD Maintain Power Signature 5752
145.4 Additional electrical specifications 5754
145.4.1 Electrical isolation 5754
145.4.2 Fault tolerance 5755
145.4.3 Impedance balance 5756
145.4.4 Common-mode output voltage 5757
145.4.5 Pair-to-pair output noise voltage 5759
145.4.6 Differential noise voltage 5759
145.4.7 Return loss 5760
145.4.8 100BASE-TX transformer droop 5760
145.4.9 Midspan PSE device additional requirements 5760
145.5 Data Link Layer classification 5766
145.5.1 TLV frame definition 5766
145.5.2 Data Link Layer classification timing requirements 5766
145.5.3 Power control state diagrams 5766
145.5.4 Power requests and allocations 5789
145.5.5 State change procedure across a link (single-signature) 5789
145.5.6 State change procedure across a link (dual-signature) 5791
145.5.7 Autoclass 5792
145.6 Environmental 5793
145.6.1 General safety 5793
145.6.2 Network safety 5793
145.6.3 Installation and maintenance guidelines 5793
145.6.4 Patch panel considerations 5794
145.6.5 Electromagnetic emissions 5794
145.6.6 Temperature and humidity 5794
145.6.7 Labeling 5794
145.7 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 145, Power over Ethernet 5795
145.7.1 Introduction 5795
145.7.2 Identification 5795
145.7.3 PICS proforma tables for Power over Ethernet 5798

146. Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS), Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) sublayer and baseband medium, type 10BASE-T1L 5814

146.1 Overview 5814
146.1.1 Relationship of 10BASE-T1L to other standards 5814
146.1.2 Operation of 10BASE-T1L 5814
146.1.3 Conventions in this clause 5816
146.2 Service primitives and interfaces 5817
146.2.1 PMA_LINK.request 5817
146.2.2 PMA_LINK.indication 5819
146.2.3 PMA_TXMODE.indication 5819
146.2.4 PMA_UNITDATA.indication 5820
146.2.5 PMA_UNITDATA.request 5820
146.2.6 PMA_RXSTATUS.indication 5820
146.2.7 PMA_REMRXSTATUS.request 5821
146.2.8 PMA_SCRSTATUS.request 5821
146.2.9 PMA_TXEN.request (tx_enable_mii) 5822
146.2.10 PMA_RX_LPI_STATUS.request (rx_lpi_active) 5822
146.2.11 PMA_TX_LPI_STATUS.request (tx_lpi_active) 5823
146.2.12 PMA_TX_LPI_STATUS.indication 5823
146.3 Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS) functions 5824
146.3.1 PCS Reset function 5824
146.3.2 PCS Data Transmission Enable 5824
146.3.3 PCS Transmit 5826
146.3.4 PCS Receive 5837
146.3.5 PCS loopback 5844
146.4 Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) sublayer 5844
146.4.1 PMA Reset function 5846
146.4.2 PMA Transmit function 5846
146.4.3 PMA Receive function 5846
146.4.4 PHY Control function 5847
146.4.5 Link Monitor function 5854
146.4.6 PMA clock recovery 5854
146.4.7 LPI quiet-refresh cycling 5854
146.5 PMA electrical specifications 5857
146.5.1 EMC tests 5857
146.5.2 Test modes 5857
146.5.3 Test fixture 5858
146.5.4 Transmitter electrical specifications 5858
146.5.5 Receiver electrical specifications 5861
146.5.6 PMA local loopback 5862
146.6 Management interface 5862
146.6.1 Support for Auto-Negotiation 5862
146.6.2 MASTER-SLAVE configuration 5862
146.6.3 PHY initialization 5863
146.6.4 Increased transmit level configuration 5863
146.6.5 EEE configuration 5863
146.6.6 PMA and PCS MDIO function mapping 5863
146.7 Link segment characteristics 5864
146.7.1 Link transmission parameters for 10BASE-T1L 5864
146.7.2 Coupling parameters between 10BASE-T1L link segments 5868
146.8 MDI specification 5869
146.8.1 MDI connectors 5869
146.8.2 MDI electrical specification 5872

146.8.3 MDI return loss ... 5872
146.8.4 MDI mode conversion loss ... 5872
146.8.5 MDI DC power voltage tolerance ... 5872
146.8.6 MDI fault tolerance ... 5872
146.9 Environmental specifications ... 5873
146.9.1 General safety ... 5873
146.9.2 Network safety ... 5873
146.10 Delay constraints ... 5873
146.11 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 146, Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS), Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) sublayer and baseband medium, type 10BASE-T1L ... 5875
146.11.1 Introduction ... 5875
146.11.2 Identification ... 5875
146.11.3 Major capabilities/options ... 5876
146.11.4 PICS proforma tables for Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS), Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) sublayer and baseband medium, type 10BASE-T1L ... 5876

147. Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS), Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) sublayer and baseband medium, type 10BASE-T1S ... 5884

147.1 Overview ... 5884
147.1.1 Relationship of 10BASE-T1S to other standards ... 5884
147.1.2 Operation of 10BASE-T1S ... 5884
147.1.3 Conventions in this clause ... 5885
147.2 Service primitives and interfaces ... 5886
147.2.1 PMA_UNITDATA.indication ... 5887
147.2.2 PMA_UNITDATA.request ... 5887
147.2.3 Mapping of PMA_CARRIER.indication ... 5888
147.2.4 PMA_LINK.request ... 5888
147.2.5 PMA_LINK.indication ... 5888
147.2.6 PCS_STATUS.indication ... 5889
147.3 Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS) functions ... 5889
147.3.1 PCS Reset function ... 5889
147.3.2 PCS Transmit ... 5890
147.3.3 PCS Receive ... 5897
147.3.4 PCS loopback ... 5902
147.3.5 Collision detection ... 5902
147.3.6 Carrier sense ... 5903
147.3.7 Support for PCS status generation ... 5903
147.4 Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) sublayer ... 5908
147.4.1 PMA Reset function ... 5908
147.4.2 PMA Transmit function ... 5908
147.4.3 PMA Receive function ... 5909
147.4.4 Link Monitor function ... 5910
147.5 PMA electrical specifications ... 5911
147.5.1 EMC tests ... 5911
147.5.2 Test modes ... 5911
147.5.3 Test fixtures ... 5912
147.5.4 Transmitter electrical specification ... 5913
147.5.5 Receiver electrical specifications ... 5915
147.5.6 PMA local loopback ... 5915
147.6 Management interface ... 5916
147.6.1 Support for Auto-Negotiation ... 5916
147.7 Point-to-point link segment characteristics ... 5916

147.7.1 Insertion loss ... 5916
147.7.2 Return loss ... 5916
147.7.3 Mode conversion loss ... 5917
147.7.4 Power sum alien near-end crosstalk (PSANEXT) ... 5917
147.7.5 Power sum alien attenuation to crosstalk ratio far-end (PSAACRF) ... 5917
147.8 Mixing segment characteristics ... 5917
147.8.1 Insertion loss ... 5918
147.8.2 Return loss ... 5918
147.8.3 Mode conversion loss ... 5918
147.9 MDI specification ... 5918
147.9.1 MDI connectors ... 5918
147.9.2 MDI electrical specification ... 5921
147.9.3 MDI line powering voltage tolerance ... 5921
147.9.4 MDI fault tolerance ... 5921
147.10 Environmental specifications ... 5922
147.10.1 General safety ... 5922
147.10.2 Network safety ... 5922
147.11 Delay constraints ... 5923
147.12 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 147, Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS), Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) sublayer and baseband medium, type 10BASE-T1S ... 5924
147.12.1 Introduction ... 5924
147.12.2 Identification ... 5924
147.12.3 Major capabilities/options ... 5925
147.12.4 PICS proforma tables for Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) sublayer and baseband medium, type 10BASE-T1S ... 5925

148. PLCA Reconciliation Sublayer (RS) ... 5932

148.1 Introduction ... 5932
148.1.1 Conventions in this clause ... 5932
148.2 Overview ... 5932
148.3 Relationship with other IEEE standards ... 5933
148.4 PLCA Reconciliation Sublayer operation ... 5934
148.4.1 General ... 5934
148.4.2 Mapping of MII signals to PLS service primitives and PLCA functions ... 5934
148.4.3 Requirements for the PHY ... 5936
148.4.4 PLCA Control ... 5937
148.4.5 PLCA Data ... 5944
148.4.6 PLCA Status ... 5949
148.5 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 148, PLCA Reconciliation Sublayer (RS) ... 5951
148.5.1 Introduction ... 5951
148.5.2 Identification ... 5951
148.5.3 PICS proforma tables for PLCA Reconciliation Sublayer (RS) ... 5952

149. Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS), Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) sublayer, and baseband medium, type 2.5GBASE-T1, 5GBASE-T1, and 10GBASE-T1 ... 5954

149.1 Overview ... 5954
149.1.1 Nomenclature ... 5954
149.1.2 Relationship of 2.5GBASE-T1, 5GBASE-T1, and 10GBASE-T1 to other standards ... 5954
149.1.3 Operation of 2.5GBASE-T1, 5GBASE-T1, and 10GBASE-T1 ... 5955
149.1.4 Signaling ... 5959

149.1.5 Interfaces ... 5960
149.1.6 Conventions in this clause ... 5960
149.2 2.5GBASE-T1, 5GBASE-T1, and 10GBASE-T1 service primitives and interfaces ... 5960
149.2.1 Technology Dependent Interface ... 5961
149.2.2 PMA service interface ... 5962
149.3 Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS) functions ... 5969
149.3.1 PCS service interface (XGMII) ... 5969
149.3.2 PCS functions ... 5969
149.3.3 Test-pattern generators ... 5985
149.3.4 Side-stream scrambler polynomials ... 5986
149.3.5 PMA training frame ... 5987
149.3.6 LPI signaling ... 5987
149.3.7 Detailed functions and state diagrams ... 5990
149.3.8 PCS management ... 6003
149.3.9 MultiGBASE-T1 operations, administration, and maintenance (OAM) ... 6004
149.4 Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) sublayer ... 6019
149.4.1 PMA functional specifications ... 6019
149.4.2 PMA functions ... 6019
149.4.3 MDI ... 6030
149.4.4 State variables ... 6030
149.4.5 State diagrams ... 6033
149.5 PMA electrical specifications ... 6035
149.5.1 Test modes ... 6035
149.5.2 Transmitter electrical specifications ... 6037
149.5.3 Receiver electrical specifications ... 6040
149.6 Management interface ... 6041
149.6.1 Optional Support for Auto-Negotiation ... 6041
149.7 Link segment characteristics ... 6041
149.7.1 Link transmission parameters ... 6041
149.7.2 Coupling parameters between link segments ... 6046
149.8 MDI specification ... 6048
149.8.1 MDI connectors ... 6048
149.8.2 MDI electrical specification ... 6048
149.8.3 MDI fault tolerance ... 6049
149.9 Environmental specifications ... 6049
149.9.1 General safety ... 6049
149.9.2 Network safety ... 6050
149.10 Delay constraints ... 6050
149.11 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 149, Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS), Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) sublayer, and baseband medium, type 2.5GBASE-T1, 5GBASE-T1, and 10GBASE-T1 ... 6052
149.11.1 Introduction ... 6052
149.11.2 Identification ... 6052
149.11.3 Major capabilities/options ... 6053
149.11.4 PICS proforma tables for Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS), Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) sublayer, and baseband medium, type 2.5GBASE-T1, 5GBASE-T1, and 10GBASE-T1 ... 6053

150. Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and medium, type 400GBASE-SR4.2 ... 6068

150.1 Overview ... 6068
150.1.1 Bit error ratio ... 6069
150.2 Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) service interface ... 6069
150.3 Delay and Skew ... 6070

150.3.1 Delay constraints ... 6070
150.3.2 Skew constraints ... 6070
150.4 PMD MDIO function mapping ... 6071
150.5 PMD functional specifications ... 6071
150.5.1 PMD block diagram ... 6072
150.5.2 PMD transmit function ... 6072
150.5.3 PMD receive function ... 6072
150.5.4 PMD global signal detect function ... 6073
150.5.5 PMD lane-by-lane signal detect function ... 6074
150.5.6 PMD reset function ... 6074
150.5.7 PMD global transmit disable function (optional) ... 6074
150.5.8 PMD lane-by-lane transmit disable function (optional) ... 6074
150.5.9 PMD fault function (optional) ... 6074
150.5.10 PMD transmit fault function (optional) ... 6074
150.5.11 PMD receive fault function (optional) ... 6075
150.6 Wavelength ranges ... 6075
150.7 PMD to MDI optical specifications for 400GBASE-SR4.2 ... 6075
150.7.1 Transmitter optical specifications ... 6076
150.7.2 Receiver optical specifications ... 6076
150.7.3 Illustrative link power budget ... 6078
150.8 Definition of optical parameters and measurement methods ... 6078
150.8.1 Test patterns for optical parameters ... 6078
150.8.2 Center wavelength and spectral width ... 6079
150.8.3 Average optical power ... 6079
150.8.4 Outer Optical Modulation Amplitude (OMAouter) ... 6079
150.8.5 Transmitter and dispersion eye closure for PAM4 (TDECQ) ... 6080
150.8.6 Extinction ratio ... 6080
150.8.7 Transmitter transition time ... 6080
150.8.8 Relative intensity noise (RIN12OMA) ... 6081
150.8.9 Receiver sensitivity ... 6081
150.8.10 Stressed receiver sensitivity ... 6082
150.9 Safety, installation, environment, and labeling ... 6083
150.9.1 General safety ... 6083
150.9.2 Laser safety ... 6083
150.9.3 Installation ... 6083
150.9.4 Environment ... 6084
150.9.5 Electromagnetic emission ... 6084
150.9.6 Temperature, humidity, and handling ... 6084
150.9.7 PMD labeling requirements ... 6084
150.10 Fiber optic cabling model ... 6084
150.10.1 Fiber optic cabling model ... 6085
150.10.2 Characteristics of the fiber optic cabling (channel) ... 6085
150.10.3 Medium Dependent Interface (MDI) ... 6086
150.11 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 150, Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and medium, type 400GBASE-SR4.2 ... 6088
150.11.1 Introduction ... 6088
150.11.2 Identification ... 6088
150.11.3 Major capabilities/options ... 6089
150.11.4 PICS proforma tables for Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and medium, type 400GBASE-SR4.2 ... 6089

151. Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and medium, type 400GBASE-FR4 and 400GBASE-LR4-6 ... 6093

151.1 Overview ... 6093
151.1.1 Bit error ratio ... 6093
151.2 Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) service interface ... 6094
151.3 Delay and Skew ... 6095
151.3.1 Delay constraints ... 6095
151.3.2 Skew constraints ... 6095
151.4 PMD MDIO function mapping ... 6095
151.5 PMD functional specifications ... 6096
151.5.1 PMD block diagram ... 6096
151.5.2 PMD transmit function ... 6096
151.5.3 PMD receive function ... 6097
151.5.4 PMD global signal detect function ... 6097
151.5.5 PMD lane-by-lane signal detect function ... 6098
151.5.6 PMD reset function ... 6098
151.5.7 PMD global transmit disable function (optional) ... 6098
151.5.8 PMD lane-by-lane transmit disable function ... 6099
151.5.9 PMD fault function (optional) ... 6099
151.5.10 PMD transmit fault function (optional) ... 6099
151.5.11 PMD receive fault function (optional) ... 6099
151.6 Wavelength-division-multiplexed lane assignments ... 6100
151.7 PMD to MDI optical specifications for 400GBASE-FR4 and 400GBASE-LR4-6 ... 6100
151.7.1 400GBASE-FR4 and 400GBASE-LR4-6 transmitter optical specifications ... 6100
151.7.2 400GBASE-FR4 and 400GBASE-LR4-6 receive optical specifications ... 6102
151.7.3 400GBASE-FR4 and 400GBASE-LR4-6 illustrative link power budgets ... 6104
151.8 Definition of optical parameters and measurement methods ... 6106
151.8.1 Test patterns for optical parameters ... 6106
151.8.2 Wavelength and side mode suppression ratio (SMSR) ... 6107
151.8.3 Average optical power ... 6107
151.8.4 Outer Optical Modulation Amplitude (OMAouter) ... 6107
151.8.5 Transmitter and dispersion eye closure for PAM4 (TDECQ) ... 6107
151.8.6 Transmitter eye closure for PAM4 (TECQ) ... 6108
151.8.7 Over/under-shoot ... 6108
151.8.8 Transmitter power excursion ... 6108
151.8.9 Extinction ratio ... 6108
151.8.10 Transmitter transition time ... 6108
151.8.11 Relative intensity noise (RIN17.1OMA and RIN15.6OMA) ... 6109
151.8.12 Receiver sensitivity ... 6109
151.8.13 Stressed receiver sensitivity ... 6110
151.9 Safety, installation, environment, and labeling ... 6110
151.9.1 General safety ... 6110
151.9.2 Laser safety ... 6110
151.9.3 Installation ... 6110
151.9.4 Environment ... 6111
151.9.5 Electromagnetic emission ... 6111
151.9.6 Temperature, humidity, and handling ... 6111
151.9.7 PMD labeling requirements ... 6111
151.10 Fiber optic cabling model ... 6111
151.11 Characteristics of the fiber optic cabling (channel) ... 6112
151.11.1 Optical fiber cable ... 6112
151.11.2 Optical fiber connection ... 6112
151.11.3 Medium Dependent Interface (MDI) requirements ... 6113
151.12 Interoperation between 400GBASE-LR4-6 and 400GBASE-FR4 ... 6113

151.13 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 151, Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and medium, type 400GBASE-FR4 and 400GBASE-LR4-6 ... 6115
151.13.1 Introduction ... 6115
151.13.2 Identification ... 6115
151.13.3 Major capabilities/options ... 6116
151.13.4 PICS proforma tables for Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and medium, type 400GBASE-FR4 and 400GBASE-LR4-6 ... 6116

152. Inverse RS-FEC sublayer ... 6120

152.1 Overview ... 6120
152.1.1 Scope ... 6120
152.1.2 Position of Inverse RS-FEC in the 100GBASE-R sublayers ... 6120
152.2 Inverse RS-FEC service interface ... 6121
152.3 PMA or FEC sublayer compatibility ... 6121
152.4 Delay constraints ... 6121
152.5 Functions within the Inverse RS-FEC sublayer ... 6121
152.5.1 Functional block diagram ... 6121
152.5.2 Transmit function ... 6122
152.5.3 Receive function ... 6127
152.5.4 Detailed functions and state diagrams ... 6132
152.6 Inverse RS-FEC MDIO function mapping ... 6134
152.6.1 IFEC_bypass_correction_enable ... 6134
152.6.2 IFEC_bypass_indication_enable ... 6135
152.6.3 IFEC_bypass_correction_ability ... 6135
152.6.4 IFEC_bypass_indication_ability ... 6136
152.6.5 hi_ser ... 6136
152.6.6 amps_lock<*x*> ... 6136
152.6.7 IFEC_align_status ... 6136
152.6.8 IFEC_corrected_cw_counter ... 6136
152.6.9 IFEC_uncorrected_cw_counter ... 6136
152.6.10 IFEC_lane_mapping<*x*> ... 6136
152.6.11 IFEC_symbol_error_counter_*i* ... *6137*
152.6.12 align_status ... 6137
152.6.13 BIP_error_counter_*i* ... 6137
152.6.14 lane_mapping<*x*> ... 6137
152.6.15 block_lock<*x*> ... 6137
152.6.16 am_lock<*x*> ... 6137
152.7 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 152, Inverse RS-FEC sublayer ... 6138
152.7.1 Introduction ... 6138
152.7.2 Identification ... 6138
152.7.3 Major capabilities/options ... 6139
152.7.4 PICS proforma tables for Inverse RS-FEC sublayer ... 6139

153. SC-FEC and 100GBASE-ZR Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) sublayer for 100GBASE-ZR PHYs ... 6142

153.1 Overview ... 6142
153.1.1 Scope ... 6142
153.1.2 Position of SC-FEC and 100GBASE-ZR PMA in the 100GBASE-R sublayers ... 6142
153.2 SC-FEC sublayer ... 6142
153.2.1 FEC service interface ... 6142

153.2.2 Delay constraints ... 6143
153.2.3 Functions within the SC-FEC sublayer ... 6144
153.2.4 Detailed functions and state diagrams ... 6151
153.2.5 SC-FEC MDIO function mapping ... 6155
153.3 100GBASE-ZR PMA sublayer ... 6156
153.3.1 100GBASE-ZR PMA service interface ... 6156
153.3.2 Functions within the 100GBASE-ZR PMA sublayer ... 6157
153.4 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 153, SC-FEC and 100GBASE-ZR Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) sublayer for 100GBASE-ZR PHYs ... 6159
153.4.1 Introduction ... 6159
153.4.2 Identification ... 6159
153.4.3 Major capabilities/options ... 6160
153.4.4 PICS proforma tables for SC-FEC sublayer for 100GBASE-ZR PHYs ... 6160

154. Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and medium, type 100GBASE-ZR ... 6162

154.1 Overview ... 6162
154.1.1 Bit error ratio ... 6163
154.2 Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) service interface ... 6164
154.3 Delay and Skew ... 6164
154.3.1 Delay constraints ... 6164
154.3.2 Skew constraints ... 6164
154.4 PMD MDIO function mapping ... 6165
154.5 PMD functional specifications ... 6166
154.5.1 PMD block diagram ... 6166
154.5.2 PMD transmit function ... 6166
154.5.3 PMD receive function ... 6167
154.5.4 PMD global signal detect function ... 6167
154.5.5 PMD reset function ... 6167
154.5.6 PMD global transmit disable function (optional) ... 6167
154.5.7 PMD fault function (optional) ... 6167
154.5.8 PMD transmit fault function (optional) ... 6168
154.5.9 PMD receive fault function (optional) ... 6168
154.6 DWDM channel over a DWDM black link ... 6168
154.7 PMD to MDI optical specifications for 100GBASE-ZR ... 6170
154.7.1 100GBASE-ZR transmitter optical specifications ... 6171
154.7.2 100GBASE-ZR receive optical specifications ... 6172
154.8 100GBASE-ZR DWDM black link transfer characteristics ... 6172
154.9 Definition of optical parameters and measurement methods ... 6172
154.9.1 Test patterns for optical parameters ... 6172
154.9.2 Optical center frequency (wavelength) and side-mode suppression ratio (SMSR) ... 6174
154.9.3 Average channel output power ... 6174
154.9.4 Spectral excursion ... 6174
154.9.5 Laser linewidth ... 6174
154.9.6 Offset between the carrier and the nominal center frequency ... 6175
154.9.7 Power difference between X and Y polarizations ... 6175
154.9.8 Skew between X and Y polarizations ... 6175
154.9.9 Error vector magnitude ... 6175
154.9.10 I-Q offset ... 6175
154.9.11 Optical signal-to-noise ratio (OSNR) ... 6175
154.9.12 Transmitter in-band OSNR ... 6175
154.9.13 Average receive power ... 6175
154.9.14 Receiver sensitivity ... 6176

154.9.15 Receiver OSNR ... 6176
154.9.16 Receiver OSNR tolerance ... 6176
154.9.17 Ripple ... 6176
154.9.18 Optical path OSNR penalty ... 6176
154.9.19 Optical path power penalty ... 6176
154.9.20 Polarization dependent loss ... 6176
154.9.21 Polarization rotation speed ... 6177
154.9.22 Inter-channel crosstalk at TP3 ... 6177
154.9.23 Interferometric crosstalk at TP3 ... 6177
154.10 Safety, installation, environment, and labeling ... 6177
154.10.1 General safety ... 6177
154.10.2 Laser safety ... 6177
154.10.3 Installation ... 6177
154.10.4 Environment ... 6177
154.10.5 Electromagnetic emission ... 6178
154.10.6 Temperature, humidity, and handling ... 6178
154.10.7 PMD labeling requirements ... 6178
154.11 Medium Dependent Interface (MDI) ... 6178
154.12 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 154, Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and medium, type 100GBASE-ZR ... 6179
154.12.1 Introduction ... 6179
154.12.2 Identification ... 6179
154.12.3 Major capabilities/options ... 6180
154.12.4 PICS proforma tables for Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and medium, type 100GBASE-ZR ... 6180

155. Clause 155 is reserved for future use ... 6183

156. Clause 156 is reserved for future use ... 6184

157. Introduction to 10 Gb/s, 25 Gb/s, and 50 Gb/s BiDi PHYs ... 6185

157.1 Overview ... 6185
157.1.1 Scope ... 6185
157.1.2 Relationship of Multi-Gigabit Ethernet BiDi PHYs to the ISO OSI reference model ... 6185
157.1.3 Nomenclature ... 6185
157.1.4 Physical Layer signaling systems ... 6187
157.2 Summary of Multi-Gigabit Ethernet BiDi sublayers ... 6189
157.2.1 Reconciliation Sublayer (RS) and Media Independent Interface (XGMII, 25GMII, and 50GMII) ... 6189
157.2.2 Physical Coding Sublayer (PCS) ... 6189
157.2.3 Forward error correction (FEC) sublayer ... 6189
157.2.4 Physical Medium Attachment (PMA) sublayer ... 6190
157.2.5 Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer ... 6190
157.2.6 Management interface (MDIO/MDC) ... 6190
157.2.7 Management ... 6190
157.3 Service interface specification method and notation ... 6190
157.4 Delay constraints ... 6190
157.5 ONU silent start ... 6191
157.6 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma ... 6191

158. Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and medium, types 10GBASE-BR10, 10GBASE-BR20, and 10GBASE-BR40 ... 6192

158.1 Overview ... 6192
158.1.1 Bit error ratio ... 6192
158.2 PMD sublayer service interface ... 6193
158.3 Delay constraints ... 6193
158.4 PMD MDIO function mapping ... 6193
158.5 PMD functional specifications ... 6194
158.5.1 PMD block diagram ... 6194
158.5.2 PMD transmit function ... 6194
158.5.3 PMD receive function ... 6194
158.5.4 PMD signal detect function ... 6195
158.5.5 PMD reset function ... 6196
158.5.6 PMD global transmit disable function ... 6196
158.5.7 PMD fault function ... 6196
158.5.8 PMD transmit fault function ... 6196
158.5.9 PMD receive fault function ... 6196
158.5.10 ONU silent start ... 6196
158.6 PMD to MDI optical specifications for 10GBASE-BRx ... 6196
158.6.1 10GBASE-BRx transmitter optical specifications ... 6197
158.6.2 10GBASE-BRx receive optical specifications ... 6198
158.6.3 10GBASE-BRx illustrative link power budgets ... 6199
158.7 Jitter specifications for 10GBASE-BRx ... 6199
158.8 Definition of optical parameters and measurement methods ... 6199
158.8.1 Test patterns ... 6199
158.8.2 Wavelength and side-mode suppression ratio (SMSR) ... 6200
158.8.3 Average optical power ... 6201
158.8.4 Extinction ratio ... 6201
158.8.5 Optical Modulation Amplitude (OMA) ... 6201
158.8.6 Relative Intensity Noise (RINxOMA) ... 6201
158.8.7 Transmitter optical waveform (transmitter eye) ... 6201
158.8.8 Receiver sensitivity ... 6202
158.8.9 Stressed receiver sensitivity ... 6202
158.8.10 Transmitter and dispersion penalty (TDP) ... 6207
158.9 Safety, installation, environment, and labeling ... 6209
158.9.1 General safety ... 6209
158.9.2 Laser safety ... 6209
158.9.3 Installation ... 6209
158.9.4 Environment ... 6209
158.9.5 Electromagnetic emission ... 6209
158.9.6 Temperature, humidity, and handling ... 6210
158.9.7 PMD labeling requirements ... 6210
158.10 Fiber optic cabling model ... 6210
158.11 Characteristics of the fiber optic cabling (channel) ... 6211
158.11.1 Optical fiber and cable ... 6211
158.11.2 Optical fiber connection ... 6211
158.11.3 Medium Dependent Interface (MDI) requirements ... 6212
158.12 Requirements for interoperation between 10GBASE-BRx PMDs ... 6212
158.13 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 158, Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and medium, types 10GBASE-BR10, 10GBASE-BR20, and 10GBASE-BR40 ... 6213
158.13.1 Introduction ... 6213
158.13.2 Identification ... 6213
158.13.3 Major capabilities/options ... 6214
158.13.4 PICS proforma tables for PMD sublayer and medium, types 10GBASE-BR10, 10GBASE-BR20, and 10GBASE-BR40 ... 6214

159. Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and medium, types 25GBASE-BR10, 25GBASE-BR20, and 25GBASE-BR40 ... 6218

159.1 Overview ... 6218
159.1.1 Bit error ratio ... 6219
159.2 Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) service interface ... 6219
159.3 Delay constraints ... 6219
159.4 PMD MDIO function mapping ... 6220
159.5 PMD functional specifications ... 6220
159.5.1 PMD block diagram ... 6220
159.5.2 PMD transmit function ... 6221
159.5.3 PMD receive function ... 6221
159.5.4 PMD global signal detect function ... 6221
159.5.5 PMD reset function ... 6222
159.5.6 PMD global transmit disable function ... 6222
159.5.7 PMD fault function (optional) ... 6222
159.5.8 PMD transmit fault function (optional) ... 6222
159.5.9 PMD receive fault function ... 6223
159.5.10 ONU silent start ... 6223
159.6 PMD to MDI optical specifications for 25GBASE-BRx ... 6223
159.6.1 25GBASE-BRx transmitter optical specifications ... 6224
159.6.2 25GBASE-BRx receiver optical specifications ... 6224
159.6.3 25GBASE-BRx illustrative link power budgets ... 6226
159.7 Definition of optical parameters and measurement methods ... 6226
159.7.1 Test patterns for optical parameters ... 6226
159.7.2 Wavelength and side-mode suppression ratio (SMSR) ... 6226
159.7.3 Average optical power ... 6226
159.7.4 Optical Modulation Amplitude (OMA) ... 6227
159.7.5 Transmitter and dispersion penalty (TDP) ... 6227
159.7.6 Extinction ratio ... 6228
159.7.7 Relative Intensity Noise ($RIN_{20}OMA$) ... 6228
159.7.8 Transmitter optical waveform (transmit eye) ... 6228
159.7.9 Receiver sensitivity ... 6228
159.7.10 Stressed receiver sensitivity ... 6229
159.8 Safety, installation, environment, and labeling ... 6229
159.8.1 General safety ... 6229
159.8.2 Laser safety ... 6229
159.8.3 Installation ... 6230
159.8.4 Environment ... 6230
159.8.5 Electromagnetic emission ... 6230
159.8.6 Temperature, humidity, and handling ... 6230
159.8.7 PMD labeling requirements ... 6230
159.9 Fiber optic cabling model ... 6230
159.10 Characteristics of the fiber optic cabling (channel) ... 6231
159.10.1 Optical fiber cable ... 6232
159.10.2 Optical fiber connection ... 6232
159.10.3 Medium Dependent Interface (MDI) requirements ... 6232
159.11 Requirements for interoperation between 25GBASE-BRx PMDs ... 6233
159.12 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 159, Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and medium, types 25GBASE-BR10, 25GBASE-BR20, and 25GBASE-BR40 ... 6234
159.12.1 Introduction ... 6234
159.12.2 Identification ... 6234
159.12.3 Major capabilities/options ... 6235

159.12.4PICS proforma tables for PMD sublayer and medium, types 25GBASE-BR10, 25GBASE-BR20, and 25GBASE-BR40 6235

160. Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and medium, types 50GBASE-BR10, 50GBASE-BR20, and 50GBASE-BR40 6239

160.1 Overview 6239
160.1.1 Bit error ratio 6240
160.2 Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) service interface 6240
160.3 Delay and Skew 6241
160.3.1 Delay constraints 6241
160.3.2 Skew constraints 6241
160.4 PMD MDIO function mapping 6242
160.5 PMD functional specifications 6242
160.5.1 PMD block diagram 6242
160.5.2 PMD transmit function 6243
160.5.3 PMD receive function 6243
160.5.4 PMD global signal detect function 6243
160.5.5 PMD reset function 6244
160.5.6 PMD global transmit disable function 6244
160.5.7 PMD fault function (optional) 6244
160.5.8 PMD transmit fault function (optional) 6244
160.5.9 PMD receive fault function 6245
160.5.10 ONU silent start 6245
160.6 PMD to MDI optical specifications for 50GBASE-BRx 6245
160.6.1 50GBASE-BRx transmitter optical specifications 6245
160.6.2 50GBASE-BRx receive optical specifications 6246
160.6.3 50GBASE-BRx illustrative link power budgets 6248
160.7 Definition of optical parameters and measurement methods 6248
160.7.1 Test patterns for optical parameters 6248
160.7.2 Wavelength and side-mode suppression ratio (SMSR) 6249
160.7.3 Average optical power 6249
160.7.4 Outer Optical Modulation Amplitude (OMAouter) 6249
160.7.5 Transmitter and dispersion eye closure for PAM4 (TDECQ) 6250
160.7.6 Transmitter eye closure for PAM4 (TECQ) 6252
160.7.7 Extinction ratio 6252
160.7.8 Transmitter transition time 6252
160.7.9 Relative intensity noise (RIN_xOMA) 6252
160.7.10 Receiver sensitivity 6253
160.7.11 Stressed receiver sensitivity 6254
160.8 Safety, installation, environment, and labeling 6255
160.8.1 General safety 6255
160.8.2 Laser safety 6256
160.8.3 Installation 6256
160.8.4 Environment 6256
160.8.5 Electromagnetic emission 6256
160.8.6 Temperature, humidity, and handling 6256
160.8.7 PMD labeling requirements 6256
160.9 Fiber optic cabling model 6257
160.10 Characteristics of the fiber optic cabling (channel) 6257
160.10.1 Optical fiber cable 6258
160.10.2 Optical fiber connection 6258
160.10.3 Medium Dependent Interface (MDI) requirements 6258
160.11 Requirements for interoperation between 50GBASE-BRx PMDs 6259

160.12 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Clause 160, Physical Medium Dependent (PMD) sublayer and medium, types 50GBASE-BR10, 50GBASE-BR20, and 50GBASE-BR40 ... 6260
160.12.1 Introduction ... 6260
160.12.2 Identification ... 6260
160.12.3 Major capabilities/options ... 6261
160.12.4 PICS proforma tables for PMD sublayer and medium, types 50GBASE-BR10, 50GBASE-BR20, and 50GBASE-BR40 ... 6261

Annex A (informative) Bibliography ... 6265

Annex B (informative) System guidelines ... 6269

B.1 Baseband system guidelines and concepts, 10 Mb/s ... 6269
B.1.1 Overall system objectives ... 6269
B.1.2 Analog system components and parameter values ... 6269
B.1.3 Minimum frame length determination ... 6271
B.1.4 System jitter budgets ... 6272
B.1.5 Systems consideration calculations ... 6274
B.2 System parameters and budgets for 1BASE5 ... 6281
B.2.1 Delay budget ... 6281
B.2.2 Minimum frame length determination ... 6282
B.2.3 Jitter budget ... 6283
B.3 Example crosstalk computation for multiple disturbers, balanced-pair cable ... 6284
B.4 10BASE-T guidelines ... 6286
B.4.1 System jitter budget ... 6286
B.4.2 Filter characteristics ... 6286
B.4.3 Notes for conformance testing ... 6286
B.5 10BASE-F ... 6289
B.5.1 System jitter budget ... 6289
B.5.2 10BASE-FP fiber optic segment loss budget ... 6289

Annex C (informative) State diagram, MAC sublayer ... 6292

Annex D (informative) Application context, selected medium specifications ... 6293

D.1 Introduction ... 6293
D.2 Type 10BASE5 applications ... 6293
D.3 Type 10BASE2 applications ... 6293
D.4 Type FOIRL and 10BASE-F applications; alternative fiber optic medium applications ... 6294
D.4.1 Alternative fiber types ... 6294
D.4.2 Type 10BASE-FP applications using 50/125 μm fiber ... 6296
D.5 10BASE-T use of cabling systems with a nominal differential characteristic impedance of 120 Ω ... 6297
D.6 10BASE-T use of cabling systems with a nominal differential characteristic impedance of 150 Ω ... 6298

Annex E (informative) Receiver wavelength design considerations (FOIRL) ... 6300

Annex F (normative) Additional attributes required for systems ... 6301

F.1 Introduction ... 6301
F.1.1 Scope ... 6301
F.2 Objects/Attributes/Actions/Notifications ... 6301

F.2.1 TimeSinceSystemReset attribute ... 6301
F.2.2 RepeaterResetTimeStamp attribute ... 6302
F.2.3 ResetSystemAction action ... 6302

Annex G (normative) Additional material required for conformance testing ... 6303

G.1 Introduction ... 6303
G.1.1 Material in support of the aDataRateMismatches attribute ... 6303

Annex H (normative) GDMO specifications for CSMA/CD managed objects ... 6304

Annex J (normative) Electrical isolation and general safety ... 6305

J.1 Electrical isolation ... 6305
J.2 General safety ... 6305
J.3 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Annex J, Electrical isolation and general safety ... 6306
J.3.1 Introduction ... 6306
J.3.2 Identification ... 6306
J.3.3 Major capabilities/options ... 6307
J.3.4 PICS proforma tables for electrical isolation and general safety ... 6307

Annex K (informative) Optional alternative terminology for “master” and “slave” ... 6308

Annex 4A (normative) Simplified full duplex media access control ... 6309

4A.1 Functional model of the MAC method ... 6309
4A.1.1 Overview ... 6309
4A.1.2 Full duplex operation ... 6310
4A.1.3 Relationships to the MAC client and Physical Layers ... 6311
4A.2 Media access control (MAC) method: precise specification ... 6311
4A.2.1 Introduction ... 6311
4A.2.2 Overview of the procedural model ... 6311
4A.2.3 Packet transmission model ... 6317
4A.2.4 Frame reception model ... 6318
4A.2.5 Preamble generation ... 6319
4A.2.6 Start frame sequence ... 6319
4A.2.7 Global declarations ... 6320
4A.2.8 Frame transmission ... 6322
4A.2.9 Frame reception ... 6325
4A.2.10 Common procedures ... 6328
4A.3 Interfaces to/from adjacent layers ... 6328
4A.3.1 Overview ... 6328
4A.3.2 MAC service ... 6328
4A.3.3 Services required from the Physical Layer ... 6331
4A.4 Specific implementations ... 6332
4A.4.1 Compatibility overview ... 6332
4A.4.2 MAC parameters ... 6333

Annex 22A (informative) MII output delay, setup, and hold time budget ... 6334

22A.1 System model ... 6334
22A.2 Signal transmission path characteristics ... 6335
22A.3 Budget calculation ... 6336

Annex 22B (informative) MII driver ac characteristics 6338

22B.1 Implications of CMOS ASIC processes 6338
22B.2 R_o(min) and V, I values for operation from 5 V ± 10% supply 6339
22B.3 R_o(min) and V, I values for operation from 3.3 V ± 0.3 V supply 6339

Annex 22C (informative) Measurement techniques for MII signal timing characteristics 6340

22C.1 Measuring timing characteristics of source terminated signals 6340
22C.2 Measuring timing characteristics of transmit signals at the MII 6340
22C.3 Measuring timing characteristics of receive signals at the MII 6340
22C.4 Measuring timing characteristics of MDIO 6341

Annex 22D (informative) Clause 22 access to Clause 45 MMD registers 6342

22D.1 Write operation 6342
22D.2 Read operation 6342
22D.3 MMD address operations 6342
22D.3.1 Address 6342
22D.3.2 Data, no post increment 6343
22D.3.3 Data, post increment on reads and writes 6343
22D.3.4 Data, post increment on writes only 6343
22D.4 PHY Coexistence and bus conflict avoidance 6343

Annex 23A (normative) 6T codewords 6344

Annex 23B (informative) Noise budget 6346

Annex 23C (informative) Use of cabling systems with a nominal differential characteristic impedance of 120 W 6347

Annex 27A (normative) Repeater delay consistency requirements 6348

Annex 28A (normative) Selector Field definitions 6349

Annex 28B (normative) IEEE 802.3 Selector Base Page definition 6350

28B.1 Selector field value 6350
28B.2 Technology Ability Field bit assignments 6350
28B.3 Priority resolution 6351
28B.4 Message Page transmission convention 6352

Annex 28C (normative) Next Page Message Code field definitions 6353

28C.1 Message code 0—Auto-Negotiation reserved code 1 6354
28C.2 Message code 1—Null Message code 6354
28C.3 Message code 2—Technology Ability extension code 1 6354
28C.4 Message code 3—Technology Ability extension code 2 6354
28C.5 Message code 4—Remote fault number code 6355
28C.6 Message code 5—Organizationally Unique Identifier (OUI) tag code 6355
28C.7 Message code 6—PHY identifier tag code 6356
28C.8 Message code 2047—Auto-Negotiation reserved code 2 6356
28C.9 Message code 7—100BASE-T2 technology message code 6356
28C.10 Message code 8—1000BASE-T technology message code 6356

28C.11 Message code 9—MultiGBASE-T and 1000BASE-T technology message code 6356
28C.12 Message code 10—EEE technology message code 6357
28C.13 Message code 11—Organizationally Unique Identifier Tagged Message (Extended Next Page) 6357

Annex 28D (normative) Description of extensions to Clause 28 and associated annexes 6358

28D.1 Introduction 6358
28D.2 Extensions to Clause 28 6358
28D.2.1 Extensions required for Clause 31 (full duplex) 6358
28D.2.2 Extensions required for Clause 32 (100BASE-T2) 6358
28D.3 Extensions for Clause 31 6358
28D.4 Extensions for Clause 32 (100BASE-T2) 6359
28D.5 Extensions required for Clause 40 (1000BASE-T) 6359
28D.6 Extensions required for Clause 55 (10GBASE-T) 6360
28D.7 Extensions required for Energy-Efficient Ethernet (Clause 78) 6360
28D.8 Extensions required for Clause 113 (25GBASE-T and 40GBASE-T) 6360
28D.9 Extensions required for Clause 126 (2.5G/5GBASE-T) 6361

Annex 29A (informative) DTE and repeater delay components 6362

29A.1 DTE delay 6362
29A.2 Repeater delay 6362

Annex 29B (informative) Recommended topology documentation 6363

Annex 30A (normative) GDMO specification for IEEE 802.3 managed object classes 6364

Annex 30B (normative) GDMO and ASN.1 definitions for management 6365

Annex 30C (normative) SNMP MIB definitions for Link Aggregation 6366

Annex 31A (normative) MAC Control opcode assignments 6367

Annex 31B (normative) MAC Control PAUSE operation 6373

31B.1 PAUSE description 6373
31B.2 Parameter semantics 6373
31B.3 Detailed specification of PAUSE operation 6374
31B.3.1 Transmit operation 6374
31B.3.2 Transmit state diagram for PAUSE operation 6374
31B.3.3 Receive operation 6375
31B.3.4 Receive state diagram for PAUSE operation 6377
31B.3.5 Status indication operation 6378
31B.3.6 Indication state diagram for pause operation 6378
31B.3.7 Timing considerations for PAUSE operation 6379
31B.4 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for MAC Control PAUSE operation 6382
31B.4.1 Introduction 6382
31B.4.2 Identification 6382
31B.4.3 Major capabilities/options 6383
31B.4.4 PAUSE command requirements 6384
31B.4.5 PAUSE command state diagram requirements 6384
31B.4.6 PAUSE command MAC timing considerations 6384

Annex 31C (normative) MAC Control organization specific extension operation 6386

31C.1 Organization specific extension description 6386
31C.2 Transmission of Extension MAC Control frame 6386
31C.3 Receive operation 6386
31C.3.1 Receive state diagram (INITIATE MAC CONTROL FUNCTION) for EXTENSION operation 6387
31C.4 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for MAC Control organization specific extension operation 6388
31C.4.1 Introduction 6388
31C.4.2 Identification 6388
31C.4.3 EXTENSION command state diagram requirements 6388

Annex 31D (normative) MAC Control PFC operation 6389

31D.1 PFC description 6389
31D.2 Parameter semantics 6389
31D.3 PFC transmit 6390
31D.4 Transmit state diagram for PFC operation 6391
31D.4.1 Constants 6391
31D.4.2 Variables 6392
31D.4.3 Messages 6392
31D.4.4 Transmit state diagram for PFC operation 6392
31D.5 PFC receive 6392
31D.6 Receive state diagram for PFC operation 6392
31D.6.1 Constants 6393
31D.6.2 Variables 6393
31D.6.3 Receive state diagram (INITIATE MAC CONTROL FUNCTION) for PFC operation 6394
31D.7 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for MAC Control PFC operation 6395
31D.7.1 Introduction 6395
31D.7.2 Identification 6395
31D.7.3 Major capabilities/options 6396
31D.7.4 PFC command requirements 6396
31D.7.5 PFC command state diagram requirements 6396

Annex 32A (informative) Use of cabling systems with nominal differential characteristic impedance of 120 Ω or 150 Ω 6397

Annex 33A (informative) PSE-PD stability 6398

33A.1 Recommended PSE design guidelines and test setup 6398
33A.2 Recommended PD design guidelines 6400

Annex 36A (informative) Jitter test patterns 6401

36A.1 High-frequency test pattern 6401
36A.2 Low-frequency test pattern 6401
36A.3 Mixed frequency test pattern 6401
36A.4 Long continuous random test pattern 6401
36A.5 Short continuous random test pattern 6402

Annex 36B (informative) 8B/10B transmission code running disparity calculation examples 6404

Annex 38A (informative) Fiber launch conditions 6406

38A.1 Overfilled Launch 6406
38A.2 Radial Overfilled Launch (ROFL) 6406

Annex 40A (informative) Additional cabling design guidelines 6407

40A.1 Alien crosstalk 6407
40A.1.1 Multipair cabling (i.e., greater than 4-pair) 6407
40A.1.2 Bundled or hybrid cable configurations 6407
40A.2 Cabling configurations 6407

Annex 40B (informative) Description of cable clamp 6409

40B.1 Cable clamp validation 6411

Annex 40C (informative) Add-on interface for additional Next Pages 6413

40C.1 State variables 6415
40C.2 State diagrams 6415
40C.2.1 Auto-Negotiation Transmit state diagram add-on for 1000BASE-T 6415
40C.2.2 Auto-Negotiation Receive state diagram add-on for 1000BASE-T 6418

Annex 43A (informative) Annex 43A is no longer in use. 6420

Annex 43B (informative) Annex 43B is no longer in use. 6421

Annex 43C (informative) Annex 43C is no longer in use. 6422

Annex 44A (informative) Diagram of Data Flow 6423

44A.1 10GBASE-R bit ordering 6423
44A.2 10GBASE-W serial bit ordering 6423
44A.3 10GBASE-LX4 bit ordering 6423
44A.4 Loopback locations 6429

Annex 45A (informative) Clause 45 MDIO electrical interface 6430

45A.1 MDIO driver 6430
45A.2 Single Clause 45 electrical interface 6430
45A.3 Clause 45 electrical interface for STA with Clause 22 electrical interface to PHYs 6431
45A.4 Clause 22 electrical interface for STA with Clause 45 electrical interface to MMDs 6431

Annex 48A (normative) Jitter test patterns 6433

48A.1 High-frequency test pattern 6433
48A.2 Low-frequency test pattern 6433
48A.3 Mixed-frequency test pattern 6433
48A.4 Continuous random test pattern (CRPAT) 6434
48A.5 Continuous jitter test pattern (CJPAT) 6435
48A.5.1 Continuous jitter test pattern (CJPAT) 10 bit values 6436

Annex 48B (informative) Jitter test methods 6440

48B.1 BER and jitter model ... 6440
48B.1.1 Description of dual Dirac mathematical model ... 6440
48B.1.2 Random Jitter ... 6442
48B.1.3 Addition of Deterministic Jitter ... 6442
48B.1.4 Effects of jitter high-pass filtering and CJPAT on deterministic jitter ... 6442
48B.2 Jitter tolerance test methodologies ... 6443
48B.2.1 Calibration of a signal source using the BERT scan technique ... 6443
48B.3 Jitter output test methodologies ... 6444
48B.3.1 Time domain measurement—Scope and BERT scan ... 6444
48B.3.2 Time Interval Analysis ... 6446

Annex 50A (informative) Thresholds for Severely Errored Second calculations ... 6450

50A.1 Section SES threshold ... 6450
50A.2 Line SES threshold ... 6450
50A.3 Path SES threshold ... 6450
50A.4 Definition of Path Block Error ... 6451
50A.5 Definition of Far End Path Block Error ... 6451

Annex 55A (normative) LDPC details ... 6452

55A.1 Generator matrix ... 6452
55A.2 Sparse parity check matrix H ... 6452

Annex 55B (informative) Additional cabling design guidelines for 10GBASE-T ... 6453

55B.1 Alien crosstalk considerations ... 6453
55B.1.1 Alien crosstalk mitigation ... 6454
55B.1.2 Alien crosstalk mitigation procedure ... 6455

Annex 57A (normative) Requirements for support of Slow Protocols ... 6456

57A.1 Introduction and rationale ... 6456
57A.2 Slow Protocol transmission characteristics ... 6456
57A.3 Addressing ... 6456
57A.4 Protocol identification ... 6457
57A.5 Handling of Slow Protocol frames ... 6458
57A.6 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Annex 57A, Requirements for support of Slow Protocols ... 6459
57A.6.1 Introduction ... 6459
57A.6.2 Identification ... 6459

Annex 57B (normative) Organization specific slow protocol (OSSP) ... 6461

57B.1 Transmission and representation of octets ... 6461
57B.1.1 OSSPDU frame structure ... 6461
57B.2 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Annex 57B, Organization specific slow protocol (OSSP) ... 6463
57B.2.1 Introduction ... 6463
57B.2.2 Identification ... 6463

Annex 58A (informative) Frame-based testing ... 6465

Annex 58B (informative) Jitter, OMA, and TDP ... 6467

58B.1 Jitter at TP1 and TP4 for 100BASE-LX10 and 100BASE-BX10 ... 6467
58B.2 OMA relationship to extinction ratio and power measurements ... 6467
58B.3 Approximate measures of TDP ... 6468
58B.4 Jitter measurements ... 6469

Annex 59A (informative) Jitter budget and measurements ... 6471

59A.1 Jitter specifications ... 6471
59A.2 Total jitter measurements ... 6472
59A.3 Deterministic or high probability jitter measurement ... 6472

Annex 60A (informative) Jitter at TP1 to TP4 for 1000BASE-PX ... 6473

Annex 61A (informative) EFM Copper examples ... 6475

61A.1 Purpose and scope ... 6475
61A.2 Aggregation Discovery example ... 6475
61A.3 Example of 64/65-octet encapsulation ... 6479

Annex 61B (informative) Handshake codepoints for 2BASE-TL and 10PASS-TS ... 6483

61B.1 Purpose and scope ... 6483
61B.2 Level-1 S field codepoints for 2BASE-TL and 10PASS-TS ... 6483
61B.3 Codepoints for 2BASE-TL ... 6483
61B.3.1 Level-2 S field codepoints for 2BASE-TL ... 6483
61B.3.2 Level-3 S field codepoints for 2BASE-TL ... 6485
61B.4 Codepoints for 10PASS-TS ... 6504
61B.4.1 Level-2 S field codepoints for 10PASS-TS ... 6504
61B.4.2 Level-3 S field codepoints for 10PASS-TS ... 6505
61B.5 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Annex 61B, Handshake codepoints for 2BASE-TL and 10PASS-TS ... 6510
61B.5.1 Introduction ... 6510
61B.5.2 Identification ... 6510
61B.5.3 Major capabilities/options ... 6510
61B.5.4 2BASE-TL handshake coding rules ... 6511

Annex 62A (normative) PMD profiles for 10PASS-TS ... 6512

62A.1 Introduction and rationale ... 6512
62A.2 Relationship to other clauses ... 6512
62A.3 Profile definitions ... 6512
62A.3.1 Bandplan and PSD mask profiles ... 6512
62A.3.2 Bandplan definitions ... 6514
62A.3.3 PSD mask definitions ... 6514
62A.3.4 UPBO Reference PSD Profiles ... 6514
62A.3.5 Band Notch Profiles ... 6515
62A.3.6 Payload rate profiles ... 6517
62A.3.7 Complete profiles ... 6517
62A.3.8 Default profile ... 6517
62A.4 Register settings ... 6518
62A.5 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Annex 62A, PMD profiles for 10PASS-TS ... 6520
62A.5.1 Introduction ... 6520
62A.5.2 Identification ... 6520

62A.5.3 Major capabilities/options ... 6521
62A.5.4 PICS proforma tables for PMD profiles for 10PASS-TS ... 6521

Annex 62B (normative) Performance guidelines for 10PASS-TS PMD profiles ... 6525

62B.1 Introduction and rationale ... 6525
62B.2 Relationship to other clauses ... 6525
62B.3 Performance test cases ... 6525
62B.3.1 Additional tests ... 6527
62B.4 Deployment guidelines ... 6527
62B.5 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Annex 62B, Performance guidelines for 10PASS-TS PMD profiles ... 6528
62B.5.1 Introduction ... 6528
62B.5.2 Identification ... 6528
62B.5.3 Major capabilities/options ... 6529
62B.5.4 PICS proforma tables for Performance guidelines for 10PASS-TS PMD profiles ... 6529

Annex 62C (informative) 10PASS-TS Examples ... 6530

62C.1 Introduction ... 6530
62C.2 Bandplan configuration ... 6530
62C.2.1 Plan A with variable LF region ... 6533
62C.3 PSD mask configuration ... 6534
62C.3.1 General procedure ... 6534
62C.3.2 PSD Masks for Plan A with variable LF region ... 6534

Annex 63A (normative) PMD Profiles for 2BASE-TL ... 6535

63A.1 Introduction and rationale ... 6535
63A.2 Relationship to other clauses ... 6535
63A.3 Profile definitions ... 6535
63A.4 Register settings ... 6536
63A.5 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma Annex 63A, PMD Profiles for 2BASE-TL ... 6537
63A.5.1 Introduction ... 6537
63A.5.2 Identification ... 6537
63A.5.3 Major capabilities/options ... 6538
63A.5.4 PICS proforma tables for Performance guidelines for 2BASE-TL PMD profiles ... 6538

Annex 63B (normative) Performance guidelines for 2BASE-TL PMD profiles ... 6539

63B.1 Introduction and rationale ... 6539
63B.2 Relationship to other clauses ... 6539
63B.3 Performance test cases. ... 6539
63B.4 Deployment Guidelines ... 6541
63B.5 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Annex 63B, Performance guidelines for 2BASE-TL PMD profiles ... 6542
63B.5.1 Introduction ... 6542
63B.5.2 Identification ... 6542
63B.5.3 Major capabilities/options ... 6543
63B.5.4 PICS proforma tables for Performance guidelines for 2BASE-TL PMD profiles ... 6543

Annex 67A (informative) Environmental characteristics for Ethernet subscriber access networks ... 6544

67A.1 Introduction 6544
67A.1.1 Terminal deployment scenarios 6544
67A.2 Temperature 6545
67A.3 Temperature impact on optical components 6547
67A.3.1 Component case temperature recommendations 6547

Annex 69A (normative) Interference tolerance testing 6549

69A.1 Introduction 6549
69A.2 Test setup 6549
69A.2.1 Pattern generator 6550
69A.2.2 Test channel 6550
69A.2.3 Interference generator 6551
69A.2.4 Transmitter control 6551
69A.3 Test methodology 6552

Annex 69B (informative) Interconnect characteristics 6553

69B.1 Overview 6553
69B.2 Reference model 6553
69B.3 Characteristic impedance 6553
69B.4 Channel parameters 6554
69B.4.1 Overview 6554
69B.4.2 Fitted attenuation 6555
69B.4.3 Insertion loss 6557
69B.4.4 Insertion loss deviation 6560
69B.4.5 Return loss 6562
69B.4.6 Crosstalk 6563

Annex 73A (normative) Next page message code field definitions 6566

73A.1 Message code 1—Null Message code 6566
73A.2 Message code 5—Organizationally Unique Identifier (OUI) tag code 6566
73A.3 Message code 6—AN device identifier tag code 6567
73A.4 Message code 10—EEE technology message code 6568

Annex 74A (informative) FEC block encoding examples 6569

74A.1 Input to the FEC (2112,2080) Encoder 6569
74A.2 Output of the FEC (2112,2080) Encoder 6569
74A.3 Output of the FEC (2112,2080) Encoder after scrambling with PN-2112 sequence 6570
74A.4 Output of the PN-2112 sequence generator 6571
74A.5 Output of the FEC (2112,2080) Encoder to Support Rapid Block during the wake state in EEE (optional) 6571
74A.6 Output of the FEC (2112,2080) Encoder to Support Rapid Block during the refresh state in EEE (optional) 6571

Annex 75A (informative) Dual-rate receiver implementation 6573

75A.1 Overview 6573

Annex 75B (informative) Illustrative channels and penalties for 10GBASE-PR and 10/1GBASE-PRX power budget classes 6576

75B.1 Overview 6576
75B.2 Wavelength allocation 6576
75B.2.1 Downstream wavelength allocation 6576
75B.2.2 Upstream wavelength allocation 6578

Annex 75C (informative) Jitter at TP1 to TP8 for 10GBASE–PR and 10/1GBASE–PRX 6579

75C.1 Overview 6579

Annex 76A (informative) FEC Encoding example 6581

76A.1 Introduction and rationale 6581
76A.2 64B/66B block input 6581
76A.3 66 bit block input in binary format 6583
76A.4 RS(255,223) input buffer in Binary Format 6583
76A.5 RS(255,223) input buffer 6584
76A.6 Parity symbol output 6585
76A.7 Parity symbols in binary format 6585
76A.8 64B/66B Parity Blocks for Transmit 6586
76A.9 Parity 66 bit blocks in binary format 6586

Annex 83A (normative) 40 Gb/s Attachment Unit Interface (XLAUI) and 100 Gb/s ten-lane Attachment Unit Interface (CAUI-10) 6587

83A.1 Overview 6587
83A.1.1 Summary of major concepts 6588
83A.1.2 Rate of operation 6588
83A.2 XLAUI/CAUI-10 link block diagram 6588
83A.2.1 Transmitter compliance points 6589
83A.2.2 Receiver compliance points 6590
83A.3 XLAUI/CAUI-10 electrical characteristics 6590
83A.3.1 Signal levels 6590
83A.3.2 Signal paths 6591
83A.3.3 EEE operation 6591
83A.3.4 Transmitter characteristics 6591
83A.3.5 Receiver characteristics 6596
83A.4 Interconnect characteristics 6600
83A.4.1 Characteristic impedance 6601
83A.5 Electrical parameter measurement methods 6602
83A.5.1 Transmit jitter 6602
83A.5.2 Receiver tolerance 6602
83A.6 Environmental specifications 6603
83A.6.1 General safety 6603
83A.6.2 Network safety 6603
83A.6.3 Installation and maintenance guidelines 6603
83A.6.4 Electromagnetic compatibility 6603
83A.6.5 Temperature and humidity 6603
83A.7 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Annex 83A, 40 Gb/s Attachment Unit Interface (XLAUI) and 100 Gb/s ten-lane Attachment Unit Interface (CAUI-10) 6604
83A.7.1 Introduction 6604
83A.7.2 Identification 6604
83A.7.3 Major capabilities/options 6605
83A.7.4 XLAUI/CAUI-10 transmitter requirements 6605

83A.7.5 XLAUI/CAUI-10 receiver requirements 6606
83A.7.6 Electrical measurement methods 6606
83A.7.7 Environmental specifications 6606

Annex 83B (normative) Chip-to-module 40 Gb/s Attachment Unit Interface (XLAUI) and 100 Gb/s ten-lane Attachment Unit Interface (CAUI-10) 6607

83B.1 Overview 6607
83B.2 Compliance point specifications for chip-to-module XLAUI/CAUI-10 6609
83B.2.1 Module specifications 6611
83B.2.2 Host specifications 6614
83B.2.3 Host input signal tolerance 6615
83B.3 Environmental specifications 6616
83B.3.1 General safety 6616
83B.3.2 Network safety 6616
83B.3.3 Installation and maintenance guidelines 6616
83B.3.4 Electromagnetic compatibility 6616
83B.3.5 Temperature and humidity 6617
83B.4 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Annex 83B, Chip-to-module 40 Gb/s Attachment Unit Interface (XLAUI) and 100 Gb/s ten-lane Attachment Unit Interface (CAUI-10) 6618
83B.4.1 Introduction 6618
83B.4.2 Identification 6618
83B.4.3 Major capabilities/options 6619
83B.4.4 Module requirements 6619
83B.4.5 Host requirements 6619
83B.4.6 Environmental specifications 6620

Annex 83C (informative) PMA sublayer partitioning examples 6621

83C.1 Partitioning examples with FEC 6621
83C.1.1 FEC implemented with PCS 6621
83C.1.2 FEC implemented with PMD 6622
83C.2 Partitioning examples with RS-FEC 6623
83C.2.1 Single PMA sublayer with RS-FEC 6623
83C.2.2 Single CAUI-10 with RS-FEC 6624
83C.3 Partitioning examples without FEC 6625
83C.3.1 Single PMA sublayer without FEC 6625
83C.3.2 Single XLAUI/CAUI-4 without FEC 6626
83C.3.3 Separate SERDES for optical module interface 6627
83C.4 Partitioning examples with SC-FEC 6628
83C.4.1 CAUI-4 with SC-FEC 6628

Annex 83D (normative) Chip-to-chip 100 Gb/s four-lane Attachment Unit Interface (CAUI-4) 6629

83D.1 Overview 6629
83D.2 CAUI-4 chip-to-chip compliance point definition 6631
83D.3 CAUI-4 chip-to-chip electrical characteristics 6631
83D.3.1 CAUI-4 transmitter characteristics 6631
83D.3.2 Optional EEE operation 6633
83D.3.3 CAUI-4 receiver characteristics 6634
83D.3.4 Global energy detect function for optional EEE operation 6636
83D.4 CAUI-4 chip-to-chip channel characteristics 6636
83D.5 Example usage of the optional transmitter equalization feedback 6637

83D.5.1 Overview ... 6637
83D.5.2 Tuning equalization settings on lane 0 in the transmit direction ... 6638
83D.5.3 Tuning equalization settings on lane 0 in the receive direction ... 6639
83D.6 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Annex 83D, Chip-to-chip 100 Gb/s four-lane Attachment Unit Interface (CAUI-4) ... 6640
83D.6.1 Introduction ... 6640
83D.6.2 Identification ... 6640
83D.6.3 Major capabilities/options ... 6641
83D.6.4 PICS proforma tables for chip-to-chip 100 Gb/s four-lane Attachment Unit Interface (CAUI-4) ... 6641

Annex 83E (normative) Chip-to-module 100 Gb/s four-lane Attachment Unit Interface (CAUI-4) ... 6643

83E.1 Overview ... 6643
83E.1.1 Bit error ratio ... 6644
83E.2 CAUI-4 chip-to-module compliance point definitions ... 6645
83E.3 CAUI-4 chip-to-module electrical characteristics ... 6645
83E.3.1 CAUI-4 host output characteristics ... 6645
83E.3.2 CAUI-4 module output characteristics ... 6651
83E.3.3 CAUI-4 host input characteristics ... 6652
83E.3.4 CAUI-4 module input characteristics ... 6656
83E.4 CAUI-4 measurement methodology ... 6659
83E.4.1 HCB/MCB characteristics ... 6659
83E.4.2 Eye width and eye height measurement method ... 6659
83E.5 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Annex 83E, Chip-to-module 100 Gb/s four-lane Attachment Unit Interface (CAUI-4) ... 6661
83E.5.1 Introduction ... 6661
83E.5.2 Identification ... 6661
83E.5.3 Major capabilities/options ... 6662
83E.5.4 PICS proforma tables for chip-to-module 100 Gb/s four-lane Attachment Unit Interface (CAUI-4) ... 6662

Annex 85A (informative) 40GBASE-CR4 and 100GBASE-CR10 TP0 and TP5 test point parameters ... 6664

85A.1 Overview ... 6664
85A.2 Transmitter characteristics at TP0 ... 6664
85A.3 Receiver characteristics at TP5 ... 6665
85A.4 Transmitter and receiver differential printed circuit board trace loss ... 6665
85A.5 Channel insertion loss ... 6666
85A.6 Channel return loss ... 6667
85A.7 Channel insertion loss deviation (ILD) ... 6667
85A.8 Channel integrated crosstalk noise (ICN) ... 6668

Annex 86A (normative) Parallel Physical Interface (nPPI) for 40GBASE-SR4 and 40GBASE-LR4 (XLPPI) and 100GBASE-SR10 (CPPI) ... 6670

86A.1 Overview ... 6670
86A.2 Block diagram and test points ... 6670
86A.3 Lane assignments ... 6670
86A.4 Electrical specifications for nPPI ... 6671
86A.4.1 nPPI host to module electrical specifications ... 6671
86A.4.2 nPPI module to host electrical specifications ... 6674
86A.5 Definitions of electrical parameters and measurement methods ... 6675
86A.5.1 Test points and compliance boards ... 6675

86A.5.2 Test patterns and related subclauses 6680
86A.5.3 Parameter definitions 6680
86A.6 Recommended electrical channel 6687
86A.7 Safety, installation, environment, and labeling 6688
86A.7.1 General safety 6688
86A.7.2 Installation 6688
86A.7.3 Environment 6688
86A.7.4 PMD labeling 6688
86A.8 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Annex 86A, Parallel Physical Interface (nPPI) for 40GBASE-SR4 and 40GBASE-LR4 (XLPPI) and 100GBASE-SR10 (CPPI) 6689
86A.8.1 Introduction 6689
86A.8.2 Identification 6689
86A.8.3 Major capabilities/options 6690
86A.8.4 PICS proforma tables for Parallel Physical Interface (nPPI) for 40GBASE-SR4 and 40GBASE-LR4 (XLPPI) and 100GBASE-SR10 (CPPI) 6690

Annex 91A (informative) RS-FEC codeword examples 6693

91A.1 Input to the 64B/66B to 256B/257B transcoder 6693
91A.2 Output of the RS(528,514) encoder 6694
91A.3 Output of the RS(544,514) encoder 6694
91A.4 Reed-Solomon encoder model 6695
91A.4.1 Global variable declarations for RS(528,514) 6695
91A.4.2 Global variable declarations for RS(544,514) 6696
91A.4.3 Other global variable declarations 6696
91A.4.4 GF(2^{10}) multiplier function 6696
91A.4.5 Reed-Solomon encoder function 6696
91A.4.6 Main function 6697

Annex 92A (informative) 100GBASE-CR4 TP0 and TP5 test point parameters and channel characteristics 6698

92A.1 Overview 6698
92A.2 Transmitter characteristics at TP0 6698
92A.3 Receiver characteristics at TP5 6698
92A.4 Transmitter and receiver differential printed circuit board trace loss 6698
92A.5 Channel insertion loss 6699
92A.6 Channel return loss 6701
92A.7 Channel Operating Margin (COM) 6701

Annex 93A (normative) Specification methods for electrical channels 6702

93A.1 Channel Operating Margin 6702
93A.1.1 Measurement of the channel 6705
93A.1.2 Transmitter and receiver device package models 6705
93A.1.3 Path terminations 6708
93A.1.4 Filters 6708
93A.1.5 Pulse response 6709
93A.1.6 Determination of variable equalizer parameters 6709
93A.1.7 Interference and noise amplitude 6711
93A.2 Test channel calibration using COM 6713
93A.3 Fitted insertion loss 6714
93A.4 Insertion loss deviation 6715

93A.5 Effective Return Loss ... 6715
93A.5.1 Pulse time-domain reflection signal ... 6715
93A.5.2 Effective reflection waveform ... 6716
93A.5.3 Sampled effective reflection ... 6717
93A.5.4 x-quantile of the reflection distribution ... 6718
93A.5.5 ERL ... 6718

Annex 93B (informative) Electrical backplane reference model ... 6719

Annex 93C (normative) Receiver interference tolerance ... 6720

93C.1 Test setup ... 6720
93C.2 Test method ... 6723

Annex 97A (normative) Common-mode conversion test methodology ... 6725

97A.1 Introduction ... 6725
97A.2 Test configuration and measurement ... 6725
97A.3 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Annex 97A, Common-mode conversion test methodology ... 6727
97A.3.1 Introduction ... 6727
97A.3.2 Identification ... 6727
97A.3.3 Major capabilities/options ... 6728

Annex 97B (normative) Alien Crosstalk Test Procedure ... 6729

97B.1 Introduction ... 6729
97B.1.1 Alien crosstalk test configurations ... 6729
97B.2 Alien crosstalk coupled between type A link segments ... 6729
97B.3 Cable bundling ... 6730
97B.4 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Annex 97B, Alien Crosstalk Test Procedure ... 6732
97B.4.1 Introduction ... 6732
97B.4.2 Identification ... 6732
97B.4.3 Major capabilities/options ... 6733

Annex 98A (normative) Selector Field definitions ... 6734

98A.1 Introduction ... 6734

Annex 98B (normative) IEEE 802.3 Selector Base Page definition ... 6735

98B.1 Introduction ... 6735
98B.2 Selector field value ... 6735
98B.3 Technology Ability Field bit assignments ... 6735
98B.3.1 10BASE-T1L-specific bit assignments ... 6736
98B.4 Priority Resolution ... 6736
98B.5 Message Page transmission convention ... 6736

Annex 98C (normative) Next Page Message Code Field definitions ... 6737

98C.1 Introduction ... 6737
98C.2 Message code 1—Null Message code ... 6737
98C.3 Message code 5—Organizationally Unique Identifier (OUI) tag code ... 6737

98C.4 Message code 6—AN device identifier tag code ... 6738

Annex 100A (normative) EPoC OFDM channel model ... 6739

100A.1 Topology ... 6739
100A.2 Downstream channel parameters ... 6739
100A.3 Upstream channel parameters ... 6742
100A.4 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Annex 100A, EPoC OFDM channel model ... 6745
100A.4.1 Introduction ... 6745
100A.4.2 Identification ... 6745
100A.4.3 Major capabilities/options ... 6746

Annex 109A (normative) Chip-to-chip 25 Gigabit Attachment Unit Interface (25GAUI C2C) ... 6747

109A.1 Overview ... 6747
109A.2 25GAUI C2C compliance point definition ... 6748
109A.3 25GAUI C2C electrical characteristics ... 6748
109A.3.1 25GAUI C2C transmitter characteristics ... 6748
109A.3.2 25GAUI C2C receiver characteristics ... 6748
109A.3.3 Optional EEE operation ... 6748
109A.4 25GAUI C2C channel characteristics ... 6748
109A.5 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Annex 109A, Chip-to-chip 25 Gigabit Attachment Unit Interface (25GAUI C2C) ... 6749
109A.5.1 Introduction ... 6749
109A.5.2 Identification ... 6749
109A.5.3 Major capabilities/options ... 6750
109A.5.4 PICS proforma tables for chip-to-chip 25 Gigabit Attachment Unit Interface (25GAUI C2C) ... 6750

Annex 109B (normative) Chip-to-module 25 Gigabit Attachment Unit Interface (25GAUI C2M) ... 6752

109B.1 Overview ... 6752
109B.1.1 Bit error ratio ... 6753
109B.2 25GAUI C2M compliance point definitions ... 6753
109B.3 25GAUI C2M electrical characteristics ... 6753
109B.3.1 25GAUI C2M host output characteristics ... 6753
109B.3.2 25GAUI C2M module output characteristics ... 6753
109B.3.3 25GAUI C2M host input characteristics ... 6754
109B.3.4 25GAUI C2M module input characteristics ... 6754
109B.4 25GAUI C2M measurement methodology ... 6755
109B.4.1 Eye width, eye height, and eye closure measurement method B ... 6755
109B.5 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Annex 109B, Chip-to-module 25 Gigabit Attachment Unit Interface (25GAUI C2M) ... 6757
109B.5.1 Introduction ... 6757
109B.5.2 Identification ... 6757
109B.5.3 Major capabilities/options ... 6758
109B.5.4 PICS proforma tables for chip-to-module 25 Gigabit Attachment Unit Interface (25GAUI C2M) ... 6758

Annex 109C (informative) 25GBASE-R PMA sublayer partitioning examples ... 6761

Annex 110A (informative) TP0 and TP5 test point parameters and channel characteristics for 25GBASE-CR and 25GBASE-CR-S ... 6765

110A.1 Overview ... 6765
110A.2 Transmitter characteristics at TP0 ... 6765
110A.3 Receiver characteristics at TP5 ... 6765
110A.4 Transmitter and receiver differential printed circuit board trace loss ... 6765
110A.5 Channel insertion loss ... 6765
110A.6 Channel return loss ... 6767
110A.7 Channel Operating Margin (COM) ... 6767

Annex 110B (normative) Test fixtures for 25GBASE-CR, 25GBASE-CR-S, and 25GAUI C2M ... 6768

110B.1 Test fixtures ... 6768
110B.1.1 SFP28 TP2 or TP3 test fixture ... 6768
110B.1.2 SFP28 Cable assembly test fixture ... 6768
110B.1.3 SFP28 Mated test fixtures ... 6769
110B.2 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Annex 110B, Test fixtures for 25GBASE-CR, 25GBASE-CR-S, and 25GAUI C2M ... 6771
110B.2.1 Introduction ... 6771
110B.2.2 Identification ... 6771
110B.2.3 Major capabilities/options ... 6772
110B.2.4 PICS proforma tables for test fixtures for 25GBASE-CR, 25GBASE-CR-S, and 25GAUI C2M ... 6772

Annex 110C (normative) Host and cable assembly form factors for 25GBASE-CR and 25GBASE-CR-S PHYs ... 6773

110C.1 Overview ... 6773
110C.2 Host form factors ... 6774
110C.2.1 SFP28 host form factor ... 6774
110C.2.2 QSFP28 host form factor ... 6774
110C.3 Cable assembly form factors ... 6775
110C.3.1 SFP28 to SFP28 cable assembly form factor ... 6775
110C.3.2 QSFP28 to QSFP28 cable assembly form factor ... 6775
110C.3.3 QSFP28 to 4×SFP28 cable assembly form factor ... 6775

Annex 113A (informative) Description of cable clamp and test setup ... 6777

113A.1 Overview ... 6777
113A.2 Description of cable clamp ... 6777
113A.3 Cable clamp measurement, calibration, and validation ... 6779
113A.4 Test setup ... 6782

Annex 115A (informative) BCH codeword examples ... 6783

115A.1 Output of the BCH(896, 720) encoder ... 6783
115A.2 Output of the BCH(1976, 1668) encoder ... 6783

Annex 119A (informative) 200GBASE-R and 400GBASE-R PCS FEC codeword examples ... 6785

Annex 120A (informative) 200 Gb/s and 400 Gb/s PMA sublayer partitioning examples ... 6791

120A.1 Partitioning example supporting 400GBASE-SR16 ... 6791
120A.2 Partitioning examples supporting 200GBASE-DR4/FR4/LR4 and 400GBASE-FR8/LR8 ... 6792
120A.3 Partitioning examples supporting 400GBASE-DR4 ... 6795
120A.4 Partitioning example using 200GXS and 400GXS ... 6797

Annex 120B (normative) Chip-to-chip 200 Gb/s eight-lane Attachment Unit Interface (200GAUI-8 C2C) and 400 Gb/s sixteen-lane Attachment Unit Interface (400GAUI-16 C2C) 6798

120B.1 Overview 6798
120B.2 200GAUI-8 and 400GAUI-16 chip-to-chip compliance point definition 6800
120B.3 200GAUI-8 and 400GAUI-16 chip-to-chip electrical characteristics 6801
120B.3.1 200GAUI-8 and 400GAUI-16 C2C transmitter characteristics 6801
120B.3.2 200GAUI-8 and 400GAUI-16 C2C receiver characteristics 6801
120B.4 200GAUI-8 and 400GAUI-16 chip-to-chip channel characteristics 6802
120B.5 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Annex 120B, Chip-to-chip 200 Gb/s eight-lane Attachment Unit Interface (200GAUI-8 C2C) and 400 Gb/s sixteen-lane Attachment Unit Interface (400GAUI-16 C2C) 6803
120B.5.1 Introduction 6803
120B.5.2 Identification 6803
120B.5.3 Major capabilities/options 6804
120B.5.4 PICS proforma tables for Chip-to-chip 200 Gb/s eight-lane Attachment Unit Interface (200GAUI-8 C2C) and 400 Gb/s sixteen-lane Attachment Unit Interface (400GAUI-16 C2C) 6804

Annex 120C (normative) Chip-to-module 200 Gb/s eight-lane Attachment Unit Interface (200GAUI-8 C2M) and 400 Gb/s sixteen-lane Attachment Unit Interface (400GAUI-16 C2M) 6806

120C.1 Overview 6806
120C.1.1 Bit error ratio 6808
120C.2 200GAUI-8 and 400GAUI-16 chip-to-module compliance point definitions 6808
120C.3 200GAUI-8 and 400GAUI-16 chip-to-module electrical characteristics 6808
120C.3.1 200GAUI-8 and 400GAUI-16 C2M host output characteristics 6808
120C.3.2 200GAUI-8 and 400GAUI-16 C2M module output characteristics 6808
120C.3.3 200GAUI-8 and 400GAUI-16 C2M host input characteristics 6808
120C.3.4 200GAUI-8 and 400GAUI-16 C2M module input characteristics 6809
120C.4 200GAUI-8 and 400GAUI-16 C2M measurement methodology 6809
120C.5 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Annex 120C, Chip-to-module 200 Gb/s eight-lane Attachment Unit Interface (200GAUI-8 C2M) and 400 Gb/s sixteen-lane Attachment Unit Interface (400GAUI-16 C2M) 6810
120C.5.1 Introduction 6810
120C.5.2 Identification 6810
120C.5.3 Major capabilities/options 6811
120C.5.4 PICS proforma tables for Chip-to-module 200 Gb/s eight-lane Attachment Unit Interface (200GAUI-8 C2M) and 400 Gb/s sixteen-lane Attachment Unit Interface (400GAUI-16 C2M) 6811

Annex 120D (normative) Chip-to-chip 200 Gb/s four-lane Attachment Unit Interface (200GAUI-4 C2C) and 400 Gb/s eight-lane Attachment Unit Interface (400GAUI-8 C2C) 6813

120D.1 Overview 6813
120D.2 200GAUI-4 and 400GAUI-8 chip-to-chip compliance point definition 6816
120D.3 200GAUI-4 and 400GAUI-8 chip-to-chip electrical characteristics 6816
120D.3.1 200GAUI-4 and 400GAUI-8 C2C transmitter characteristics 6816
120D.3.2 200GAUI-4 and 400GAUI-8 C2C receiver characteristics 6823
120D.4 200GAUI-4 and 400GAUI-8 chip-to-chip channel characteristics 6826
120D.4.1 Channel Operating Margin 6826
120D.4.2 Channel return loss 6827

120D.5 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Annex 120D, Chip-to-chip 200 Gb/s four-lane Attachment Unit Interface (200GAUI-4 C2C) and 400 Gb/s eight-lane Attachment Unit Interface (400GAUI-8 C2C) 6829
120D.5.1 Introduction 6829
120D.5.2 Identification 6829
120D.5.3 Major capabilities/options 6830
120D.5.4 PICS proforma tables for Chip-to-chip 200 Gb/s four-lane Attachment Unit Interface (200GAUI-4 C2C) and 400 Gb/s eight-lane Attachment Unit Interface (400GAUI-8 C2C) 6830

Annex 120E (normative) Chip-to-module 200 Gb/s four-lane Attachment Unit Interface (200GAUI-4 C2M) and 400 Gb/s eight-lane Attachment Unit Interface (400GAUI-8 C2M) 6832

120E.1 Overview 6832
120E.1.1 Bit error ratio 6834
120E.2 200GAUI-4 and 400GAUI-8 chip-to-module compliance point definitions 6834
120E.3 200GAUI-4 and 400GAUI-8 chip-to-module electrical characteristics 6835
120E.3.1 200GAUI-4 and 400GAUI-8 C2M host output characteristics 6835
120E.3.2 200GAUI-4 and 400GAUI-8 C2M module output characteristics 6840
120E.3.3 200GAUI-4 and 400GAUI-8 C2M host input characteristics 6842
120E.3.4 200GAUI-4 and 400GAUI-8 C2M module input characteristics 6845
120E.4 200GAUI-4 and 400GAUI-8 C2M measurement methodology 6847
120E.4.1 HCB/MCB characteristics 6847
120E.4.2 Eye width and eye height measurement method 6848
120E.4.3 Vertical eye closure 6850
120E.5 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Annex 120E, Chip-to-module 200 Gb/s four-lane Attachment Unit Interface (200GAUI-4 C2M) and 400 Gb/s eight-lane Attachment Unit Interface (400GAUI-8 C2M) 6852
120E.5.1 Introduction 6852
120E.5.2 Identification 6852
120E.5.3 Major capabilities/options 6853
120E.5.4 PICS proforma tables for Chip-to-module 200 Gb/s four-lane Attachment Unit Interface (200GAUI-4 C2M) and 400 Gb/s eight-lane Attachment Unit Interface (400GAUI-8 C2M) 6853

Annex 127A (informative) Compatibility of 2.5GBASE-X PCS/PMA with 1000BASE-X PCS/PMA running 2.5 times faster 6855

Annex 128A (normative) 2.5 Gb/s Storage Enclosure Interface (2.5GSEI) 6856

128A.1 Overview 6856
128A.1.1 Bit error ratio 6858
128A.2 2.5GSEI compliance point definitions 6858
128A.3 2.5GSEI electrical characteristics 6861
128A.3.1 2.5GSEI host output characteristics 6861
128A.3.2 2.5GSEI host input characteristics 6864
128A.3.3 2.5GSEI drive output characteristics 6867
128A.3.4 2.5GSEI drive input characteristics 6868
128A.4 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Annex 128A, 2.5 Gb/s Storage Enclosure Interface (2.5GSEI) 6871
128A.4.1 Introduction 6871
128A.4.2 Identification 6871
128A.4.3 Major capabilities/options 6872
128A.4.4 PICS proforma tables for 2.5 Gb/s Storage Enclosure Interface (2.5GSEI) 6872

Annex 128B (normative) Test fixtures for 2.5 Gb/s and 5 Gb/s Storage Enclosure Interfaces 6874

128B.1 Host and drive compliance boards 6874
128B.1.1 Test fixture return loss 6874
128B.1.2 Test fixture insertion loss 6874
128B.2 Mated test fixtures 6875
128B.2.1 Mated test fixtures insertion loss 6876
128B.2.2 Mated test fixtures return loss 6876
128B.2.3 Mated test fixtures integrated crosstalk noise 6877
128B.3 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Annex 128B, Test fixtures for 2.5 Gb/s and 5 Gb/s Storage Enclosure Interfaces 6879
128B.3.1 Introduction 6879
128B.3.2 Identification 6879
128B.3.3 Major capabilities/options 6880
128B.3.4 PICS proforma tables for test fixtures 6880

Annex 130A (normative) 5 Gb/s Storage Enclosure Interface (5GSEI) 6881

130A.1 Overview 6881
130A.1.1 Bit error ratio 6883
130A.2 5GSEI compliance point definitions 6883
130A.3 5GSEI electrical characteristics 6886
130A.3.1 5GSEI host output characteristics 6886
130A.3.2 5GSEI host input characteristics 6890
130A.3.3 5GSEI drive output characteristics 6893
130A.3.4 5GSEI drive input characteristics 6895
130A.4 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Annex 130A, 5 Gb/s Storage Enclosure Interface (5GSEI) 6899
130A.4.1 Introduction 6899
130A.4.2 Identification 6899
130A.4.3 Major capabilities/options 6900
130A.4.4 PICS proforma tables for 5 Gb/s Storage Enclosure Interface (5GSEI) 6900

Annex 135A (informative) 50 Gb/s and 100 Gb/s PMA sublayer partitioning examples 6902

135A.1 Partitioning examples of 50GBASE-R PHYs 6902
135A.2 Partitioning examples of 100GBASE-P PHYs 6907
135A.3 Partitioning examples of 100GAUI-n with Inverse RS-FEC 6908
135A.3.1 100GAUI-n with Inverse RS-FEC 6908
135A.3.2 CAUI-4 chip-to-chip and 100GAUI-n chip-to-module with Inverse RS-FEC 6909

Annex 135B (normative) Chip-to-Chip 50 Gb/s two-lane Attachment Unit Interface (LAUI-2 C2C) 6910

135B.1 Overview 6910
135B.2 LAUI-2 C2C compliance point definition 6911
135B.3 LAUI-2 C2C electrical characteristics 6911
135B.3.1 LAUI-2 C2C transmitter characteristics 6911
135B.3.2 LAUI-2 C2C receiver characteristics 6912
135B.4 LAUI-2 C2C channel characteristics 6912
135B.5 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Annex 135B, Chip-to-Chip 50 Gb/s two-lane Attachment Unit Interface (LAUI-2 C2C) 6913
135B.5.1 Introduction 6913
135B.5.2 Identification 6913
135B.5.3 Major capabilities/options 6914

135B.5.4 PICS proforma tables for chip-to-chip 50 Gb/s two-lane Attachment Unit Interface (LAUI-2 C2C) ... 6914

Annex 135C (normative) Chip-to-module 50 Gb/s two-lane Attachment Unit Interface (LAUI-2 C2M) ... 6916

135C.1 Overview ... 6916
135C.1.1 Bit error ratio ... 6917
135C.2 LAUI-2 C2M compliance point definitions ... 6917
135C.3 LAUI-2 C2M electrical characteristics ... 6917
135C.3.1 LAUI-2 C2M host output characteristics ... 6917
135C.3.2 LAUI-2 C2M module output characteristics ... 6917
135C.3.3 LAUI-2 C2M host input characteristics ... 6918
135C.3.4 LAUI-2 C2M module input characteristics ... 6918
135C.4 LAUI-2 C2M measurement methodology ... 6918
135C.5 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Annex 135C, Chip-to-module 50 Gb/s two-lane Attachment Unit Interface (LAUI-2 C2M) ... 6919
135C.5.1 Introduction ... 6919
135C.5.2 Identification ... 6919
135C.5.3 Major capabilities/options ... 6920
135C.5.4 PICS proforma tables for chip-to-module 50 Gb/s two-lane Attachment Unit Interface (LAUI-2 C2M) ... 6920

Annex 135D (normative) Chip-to-chip 50 Gb/s two-lane Attachment Unit Interface (50GAUI-2 C2C) and 100 Gb/s four-lane Attachment Unit Interface (100GAUI-4 C2C) ... 6922

135D.1 Overview ... 6922
135D.2 50GAUI-2 C2C and 100GAUI-4 C2C compliance point definition ... 6924
135D.3 50GAUI-2 C2C and 100GAUI-4 C2C electrical characteristics ... 6924
135D.3.1 50GAUI-2 C2C and 100GAUI-4 C2C transmitter characteristics ... 6924
135D.3.2 50GAUI-2 C2C and 100GAUI-4 C2C receiver characteristics ... 6924
135D.4 50GAUI-2 C2C and 100GAUI-4 C2C channel characteristics ... 6924
135D.5 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Annex 135D, Chip-to-chip 50 Gb/s two-lane Attachment Unit Interface (50GAUI-2 C2C) and 100 Gb/s four-lane Attachment Unit Interface (100GAUI-4 C2C) ... 6925
135D.5.1 Introduction ... 6925
135D.5.2 Identification ... 6925
135D.5.3 Major capabilities/options ... 6926
135D.5.4 PICS proforma tables for chip-to-chip 50 Gb/s two-lane Attachment Unit Interface (50GAUI-2 C2C) and 100 Gb/s four-lane Attachment Unit Interface (100GAUI-4 C2C) ... 6926

Annex 135E (normative) Chip-to-module 50 Gb/s two-lane Attachment Unit Interface (50GAUI-2 C2M) and 100 Gb/s four-lane Attachment Unit Interface (100GAUI-4 C2M) ... 6928

135E.1 Overview ... 6928
135E.1.1 Bit error ratio ... 6930
135E.2 50GAUI-2 C2M and 100GAUI-4 C2M compliance point definitions ... 6930
135E.3 50GAUI-2 C2M and 100GAUI-4 C2M electrical characteristics ... 6930
135E.3.1 50GAUI-2 C2M and 100GAUI-4 C2M host output characteristics ... 6930
135E.3.2 50GAUI-2 C2M and 100GAUI-4 C2M module output characteristics ... 6930
135E.3.3 50GAUI-2 C2M and 100GAUI-4 C2M host input characteristics ... 6930
135E.3.4 50GAUI-2 C2M and 100GAUI-4 C2M module input characteristics ... 6930
135E.4 50GAUI-2 C2M and 100GAUI-4 C2M measurement methodology ... 6930

135E.5 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Annex 135E, Chip-to-module 50 Gb/s two-lane Attachment Unit Interface (50GAUI-2 C2M) and 100 Gb/s four-lane Attachment Unit Interface (100GAUI-4 C2M) 6931
135E.5.1 Introduction 6931
135E.5.2 Identification 6931
135E.5.3 Major capabilities/options 6932
135E.5.4 PICS proforma tables for chip-to-module 50 Gb/s two-lane Attachment Unit Interface (50GAUI-2 C2M) and 100 Gb/s four-lane Attachment Unit Interface (100GAUI-4 C2M) 6932

Annex 135F (normative) Chip-to-chip 50 Gb/s one-lane Attachment Unit Interface (50GAUI-1 C2C) and 100 Gb/s two-lane Attachment Unit Interface (100GAUI-2 C2C) 6935

135F.1 Overview 6935
135F.2 50GAUI-1 C2C and 100GAUI-2 C2C compliance point definition 6937
135F.3 50GAUI-1 C2C and 100GAUI-2 C2C electrical characteristics 6937
135F.3.1 50GAUI-1 C2C and 100GAUI-2 C2C transmitter characteristics 6937
135F.3.2 50GAUI-1 C2C and 100GAUI-2 C2C receiver characteristics 6937
135F.4 50GAUI-1 C2C and 100GAUI-2 C2C channel characteristics 6938
135F.5 Example usage of the optional transmitter precoder request 6938
135F.5.1 Overview 6938
135F.5.2 Configuring precoder setting in the transmit direction 6938
135F.5.3 Configuring precoder setting in the receive direction 6939
135F.6 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Annex 135F, Chip-to-chip 50 Gb/s one-lane Attachment Unit Interface (50GAUI-1 C2C) and 100 Gb/s two-lane Attachment Unit Interface (100GAUI-2 C2C) 6940
135F.6.1 Introduction 6940
135F.6.2 Identification 6940
135F.6.3 Major capabilities/options 6941
135F.6.4 PICS proforma tables for chip-to-chip 50 Gb/s one-lane Attachment Unit Interface (50GAUI-1 C2C) and 100 Gb/s two-lane Attachment Unit Interface (100GAUI-2 C2C) 6941

Annex 135G (normative) Chip-to-module 50 Gb/s one-lane Attachment Unit Interface (50GAUI-1 C2M) and 100 Gb/s two-lane Attachment Unit Interface (100GAUI-2 C2M) 6943

135G.1 Overview 6943
135G.1.1 Bit error ratio 6945
135G.2 50GAUI-1 C2M and 100GAUI-2 C2M compliance point definitions 6945
135G.3 50GAUI-1 C2M and 100GAUI-2 C2M electrical characteristics 6945
135G.3.1 50GAUI-1 C2M and 100GAUI-2 C2M host output characteristics 6945
135G.3.2 50GAUI-1 C2M and 100GAUI-2 C2M module output characteristics 6945
135G.3.3 50GAUI-1 C2M and 100GAUI-2 C2M host input characteristics 6945
135G.3.4 50GAUI-1 C2M and 100GAUI-2 C2M module input characteristics 6945
135G.4 50GAUI-1 C2M and 100GAUI-2 C2M measurement methodology 6945
135G.5 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Annex 135G, Chip-to-module 50 Gb/s one-lane Attachment Unit Interface (50GAUI-1 C2M) and 100 Gb/s two-lane Attachment Unit Interface (100GAUI-2 C2M) 6946
135G.5.1 Introduction 6946
135G.5.2 Identification 6946
135G.5.3 Major capabilities/options 6947
135G.5.4 PICS proforma tables for chip-to-module 50 Gb/s one-lane Attachment Unit Interface (50GAUI-1 C2M) and 100 Gb/s two-lane Attachment Unit Interface (100GAUI-2 C2M) 6947

Annex 136A (informative) TP0 and TP5 test point parameters and channel characteristics for 50GBASE-CR, 100GBASE-CR2, and 200GBASE-CR4 6950

136A.1 Overview 6950
136A.2 Transmitter characteristics at TP0 6950
136A.3 Receiver characteristics at TP5 6950
136A.4 Transmitter and receiver differential printed circuit board trace loss 6950
136A.5 Channel insertion loss 6950
136A.6 Channel effective return loss 6952
136A.7 Channel Operating Margin (COM) 6952

Annex 136B (normative) Test fixtures for 50GBASE-CR, 100GBASE-CR2, 200GBASE-CR4, 50GAUI-1 C2M, and 100GAUI-2 C2M 6953

136B.1 Test fixtures 6953
136B.1.1 Mated test fixtures 6953
136B.2 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Annex 136B, Test fixtures for 50GBASE-CR, 100GBASE-CR2, 200GBASE-CR4, 50GAUI-1 C2M, and 100GAUI-2 C2M 6956
136B.2.1 Introduction 6956
136B.2.2 Identification 6956
136B.2.3 Major capabilities/options 6957
136B.2.4 PICS proforma tables for test fixtures for 50GBASE-CR, 100GBASE-CR2, 200GBASE-CR4, 50GAUI-1 C2M, and 100GAUI-2 C2M 6957

Annex 136C (normative) MDIs for 50GBASE-CR, 100GBASE-CR2, and 200GBASE-CR4 6958

136C.1 Overview 6958
136C.2 MDI connector types 6961
136C.2.1 SFP28 6961
136C.2.2 QSFP28 6962
136C.2.3 MicroQSFP 6962
136C.2.4 QSFP-DD 6963
136C.2.5 OSFP 6964
136C.3 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Annex 136C, MDIs for 50GBASE-CR, 100GBASE-CR2, and 200GBASE-CR4 6965
136C.3.1 Introduction 6965
136C.3.2 Identification 6965
136C.3.3 Major capabilities/options 6966
136C.3.4 PICS proforma tables for MDIs for 50GBASE-CR, 100GBASE-CR2, and 200GBASE-CR4 6966

Annex 136D (informative) Host and cable assembly form factors for 50GBASE-CR, 100GBASE-CR2, and 200GBASE-CR4 6967

136D.1 Overview 6967
136D.2 Host form factors 6967
136D.2.1 SFP28 host form factor 6967
136D.2.2 QSFP28 host form factor 6967
136D.2.3 microQSFP host form factor 6968
136D.2.4 QSFP-DD host form factor 6968
136D.2.5 OSFP host form factor 6968
136D.3 Cable assembly form factors 6969
136D.3.1 One-plug to one-plug cable assembly form factor 6969

136D.3.2 One-plug to two-plug cable assembly form factor 6970
136D.3.3 One-plug to four-plug cable assembly form factor 6971
136D.3.4 One-plug to eight-plug cable assembly form factor 6972

Annex 142A (informative) Encoding example for QC-LDPC(16952,14392) FEC and interleaving 6973

142A.1 Example of initial control seed sequence 6973
142A.2QC-LDPC FEC encoder test vectors 6973

Annex 145A (informative) Resistance and current unbalance 6981

145A.1 Intra pair resistance unbalance 6981
145A.2 Pair-to-pair unbalance overview 6981
145A.3 Pair-to-pair link section resistance unbalance requirements for 4-pair operation 6983
145A.4 PSE resistance and current unbalance 6983
145A.4.1 Direct RPSE measurement 6984
145A.5 PD resistance and current unbalance 6985

Annex 145B (informative) Timing diagrams 6986

145B.1 CC_DET_SEQ timing diagrams 6986
145B.1.1 CC_DET_SEQ=0 timing diagrams 6986
145B.1.2 CC_DET_SEQ=1 timing diagrams 6987
145B.1.3 CC_DET_SEQ=2 timing diagrams 6988
145B.1.4 CC_DET_SEQ=3 timing diagrams 6989
145B.2 PSE Single-Event Physical Layer classification timing diagram 6990
145B.3 PSE Multiple-Event Physical Layer classification timing diagram 6990

Annex 145C (informative) Power system and parameters 6992

145C.1 Constant power 6992
145C.2 Current 6994
145C.3 Direct current resistance (DCR) 6995
145C.4 Bundled cabling applications 6996

Annex 146A (informative) Guidelines for implementation of the 10BASE-T1L PHY in an intrinsically safe application 6997

Annex 146B (informative) Optional power distribution 7000

146B.1 Overview 7000
146B.2 Point-to-point powering topologies 7000
146B.3 Powered trunk cable topologies 7001

Annex 149A (normative) Coupling and screening attenuation test methodology 7002

149A.1 Introduction 7002
149A.2 General test conditions 7002
149A.3 Reference cable assembly 7002
149A.4 Measurement setup 7003
149A.5 Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma for Annex 149A, Coupling and screening attenuation test methodology 7005
149A.5.1 Introduction 7005
149A.5.2 Identification 7005

149A.5.3 Major capabilities/options 7006
149A.5.4 PICS proforma tables for Coupling and screening attenuation test methodology 7006

Annex 149B (informative) OAM status 7008

149B.1 Purpose 7008
149B.2 MultiGBASE-T1 OAM status structure 7008
149B.3 MultiGBASE-T1 status message data 7008
149B.3.1 MultiGBASE-T1 status valid 7009
149B.3.2 Power supply warning 7009
149B.3.3 Internal temperature warning 7009
149B.3.4 No MAC messages warning 7009
149B.3.5 Degraded link segment 7009
149B.3.6 Polarity inversion 7009
149B.3.7 Vendor-specific field 7010
149B.3.8 Clear REC 7010
149B.3.9 REC cleared 7010
149B.3.10Receive error counter (REC) 7010
149B.4 Detailed functions and state diagrams 7010
149B.4.1 State diagram conventions 7010
149B.4.2 State diagram parameters 7010

Annex 149C (informative) Tx Function to Rx function channel characteristics 7013

149C.1 Overview 7013
149C.2 Differential printed circuit board trace loss 7013
149C.3 Channel insertion loss 7014
149C.4 Channel return loss 7014
149C.4.1 Tx/Rx function to MDI return loss 7014
149C.4.2 Link segment return loss 7016
149C.4.3 Channel return loss concatenation 7017
149C.5 Coupling between ports on multiport designs 7017

Annex 154A (informative) Examples of 100GBASE-ZR compliant DWDM black links 7018

154A.1 Introduction 7018
154A.2 Relationship between OSNR and average optical power 7019
154A.3 Examples of DWDM black link applications with OSNR at TP3 between 19.5 dB (12.5 GHz) and 35 dB (12.5 GHz) 7020
154A.4 Example of DWDM black link applications with OSNR at TP3 greater than or equal to 35 dB (12.5 GHz) 7021